

Caesar's De Bello Gallico I

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

Beta Edition April 2013

Caesar's De Bello Gallico I
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Beta Edition

© 2013 by Geoffrey D. Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13:

ISBN-10:

Published by Geoffrey Steadman

Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to help readers identify the most frequent words and encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Skim through the book and familiarize yourself with every grammar box and the appendix.

2. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading.

Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have already reviewed most of these words in first year Latin and can devote their efforts to mastering the handful of words in the initial lessons that they have never encountered.

B. Download and use the core list flashcards available online (ppt or jpg format). Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long-term memory. Flashcards are particularly efficient at promoting repetition. As you work, delete flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

Digital flashcards for less frequent vocabulary (occurring 3-4 times) will appear online in time.

3. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses

A. Persistence counts. Caesar is very consistent in his use of vocabulary and grammar, and so while the readings will maintain the same level of difficulty, you will become a much better reader with time. The more earnestly you learn vocabulary and new grammar in the early readings, the more fluently you will be able to read later passages without much preparation.

B. Read in Latin word order. Initially, readers have a tendency both (i) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (ii) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so forth. Ideally, you should read in Latin word order. Whatever method you use, always review the sentence which you have just translated in Latin word order. Over time, as you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with Caesar increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method of reading. It is a lot of fun, and with persistence it is very satisfying.

4. Reread a passage or lesson immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Caesar's consistent use of vocabulary and grammar makes it possible for readers to develop reading proficiency very quickly. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin and acquiring meaning without using English.

5. Reread the most recent passage or lesson immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

Caesar Book I Running Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following seven pages includes all 335 words in the Book 1 of Julius Caesar's *De Bello Gallico* that occur five or more times arranged in a running vocabulary list. The number in the right column indicates the lesson in which the core word first occurs. The number at the left of the dictionary entries indicates the number of occurrences of the word in Book 1. The author tabulated the frequency lists by counting the words manually. Digital flashcards are available online.

- 1 **ā, ab:** (away) from, 102
- 1 **absum, -esse, āfuī:** be absent, lack, 9
- 1 **ad:** to, toward; near, at 109
- 1 **alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 13
- 1 **animus, -ī m:** mind, spirit; *pl.* courage, 11
- 1 **appellō (1):** call, call by name, 5
- 1 **atque:** and, and also, and even, 46
- 1 **aut:** or (aut...aut – either...or), 36
- 1 **Belgae, -ārum m.:** Belgians, 5
- 1 **bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 32
- 1 **capīō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 8
- 1 **causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 25
- 1 **contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten; contend, 20
- 1 **cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 96
- 1 **dē:** (down) from; about, concerning, 37
- 1 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:** say, speak, tell, call, name, 35
- 1 **dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus:** divide, distribute, 7
- 1 **et:** and, also, even, 196
- 1 **etiam:** besides, also, even, 17
- 1 **finis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 38
- 1 **flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 22
- 1 **Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 51
- 1 **Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; *subt.* a Gaul, 20
- 1 **Germānus, -a, -um:** German, 25
- 1 **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** carry (on), wage, 8
- 1 **Helvētius, -a, -um:** Helvetian; *subst.* a Helvetian 64
- 1 **hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 82
- 1 **in:** in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 182
- 1 **incolō, -ere, -uī:** inhabit, dwell on, 5
- 1 **inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 17
- 1 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 48
- 1 **is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 286
- 1 **mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 20
- 1 **nostrer, nostra, nostrum:** our, 40
- 1 **obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 8
- 1 **omnis, omne:** every, all, 70
- 1 **pars, partis, f.:** part, share, side 26
- 1 **pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī:** to pertain to; reach, extend to, 6
- 1 **proelium, -iī n.:** battle, combat, 33
- 1 **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus:** keep off, prohibit, 11
- 1 **propterea:** on this account, therefore, 15
- 1 **prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 25
- 1 **proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, very close, 12
- 1 **que:** and, 114
- 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?):** who, which, that, 326

- 1 **reliquus, -a, um**: remaining, left (over), 20
 1 **Rhēnus, -ī m.**: Rhine River, 20
 1 **Rhodanus, -a, -um**: Rhone, 11
 1 **saepe**: often, 5
 1 **sē**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 167
 1 **Sēquanus, -a, -um**: Sequanian, 33
 1 **sōlus, -a, -um**: alone, only, lone, sole, 8
 1 **sum, esse, fui, futūrum**: to be, 79
 1 **suus, -a, -um**: his, her, its, their own, 124
 1 **tertius, -a, -um**: third, 11
 1 **trāns**; over, across (+ acc.), 7
 1 **trēs, tria**: three, 7
 1 **ūnus, -a, -um**: one, 23
 1 **virtūs, -ūtis f.**: valor, manhood, excellence, 15
 2 **addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum**: draw to, influence 12
 2 **ager, agrī m.**: field, land; farm, 16
 2 **amīcītia, -ae, f.**: friendship, 12
 2 **annus, -ī m.**: year, 7
 2 **apud**: among, at the house of (acc.), 13
 2 **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**: to judge, think, 6
 2 **autem**: however, moreover, 8
 2 **carrus, -ī m.**: wagon, cart, 7
 2 **cīvitās cīvitātis, f.**: state, city-state, 28
 2 **conficiō, -ere**: to exhaust, finish, 8
 2 **confirmō (1)**: make strong, confirm strengthen, 5
 2 **constituō, -ere, uī, -ūtus**: decide, establish, resolve, 11
 2 **cōsul, -is m.**: consul, 6
 2 **copia, -ae f.**: abundance, supply; troops, 28
 2 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus**: lead, draw, 11
 2 **ē, ex**: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 64
 2 **exeō, -īre, -ī (īvī), -itus**: go out, 6
 2 **facilis, -e**: easy; *adv.* facile, easily, 9
 2 **faciō, -ere, fecī, factum**: do, make, perform; grant, 70
 2 **fīnitimus, -a, -um**: neighboring; *subst.* neighbors, 5
 2 **fiō, fierī, factus**: become, be made, 5
 2 **frūmentum, -ī n.**: grain, 13
 2 **habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus**: have, hold; consider, 45
 2 **homō, -inis m./f.**: man, mortal, human, 22
 2 **imperium, -ī n.**: command, power, 9
 2 **inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum**: wage, carry on, bring on, 13
 2 **iter, itineris n.**: way, road, journey, 33
 2 **locus, -ī m.**: place, region, location, 33
 2 **M.**: Marcus, 7
 2 **magnus, -a, -um**: great, large; mighty, important, 34
 2 **maximus, -a, -um**: greatest, largest, 7
 2 **mīlle pl. mīlia, ium n.**: thousand, 28
 2 **minor, minus**: less, smaller, 18
 2 **multitūdo, inis f.**: multitude, population, people, 11
 2 **nōbilis, -e**: noble, renowned, 6
 2 **numerus, -ī m.**: number, multitude, 17
 2 **Orgetorix, -is m.**: Orgetorix, 8
 2 **passus, -ūs**: pace, 15

- 2 **pāx, pācis f.:** peace, quiet, rest, 6
 2 **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, convince, 8
 2 **Pīsō, Pīsōnis m.:** Piso, 5
 2 **possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 73
 2 **prō:** before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*), 14
 2 **proficīscor, -ī, -fectus:** set out, depart, 9
 2 **regnum, -ī n.:** royal power, kingdom, realm, 8
 2 **rēs, reī, f.:** thing, matter, affair, business, 71
 2 **satis:** enough, sufficient, 8
 2 **tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 16
 2 **ut:** as, just as, when (+ *ind.*); (so) that, in order that, 74
 3 **ac:** and, and also, and even, 29
 3 **accipiō:** to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 8
 3 **Aeduus, -a, -um:** Haeduan, Aeduan, 43
 3 **amīcus, -a, -um:** friendly; noun, friend, 8
 3 **ante:** before, in front of (*acc.*); *adv.* before, 12
 3 **arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 12
 3 **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum:** to collect; compel, 7
 3 **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, 12
 3 **dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, elect, select, 6
 3 **diēs, -eī m./f.:** day, time, season, 38
 3 **Diviācus, -ī m.:** Diviacus, 13
 3 **dō, dare, dedī, datum:** give; grant, 20
 3 **Dumnorīx, -īgis m.:** Dumnorix, 10
 3 **ēnuntiō (1):** announce, speak out, divulge, 7
 3 **exercitus, -ūs m.:** (trained) army, 27
 3 **fīdēs, eī f.:** faith, honor, 6
 3 **frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 11
 3 **īdem, eadem, idem:** the same, 20
 3 **ille, illa, illud:** that, those, 18
 3 **ītem:** also, likewise, in like manner, 8
 3 **iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 11
 3 **maximē:** exceedingly especially, 5
 3 **multus, -a, -um:** much, many, 16
 3 **nē:** lest, that not, no, not, 31
 3 **neque:** and not, nor (*neque...neque* = neither...nor), 50
 3 **nōn:** not, by no means, not at all, 91
 3 **ob:** on account of, because of (*acc.*), 7
 3 **occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 11
 3 **oportet:** it is proper, fitting, necessary, 9
 3 **ōrātiō, -ionis f.:** speaking, speech, language, 8
 3 **pater, patris, m.:** father, 6
 3 **per:** through, across (*acc.*) 33
 3 **perficiō, -ere:** complete, accomplish, 5
 3 **plūs (plūris):** more, 7
 3 **populus, -ī m.:** people, nation, 47
 3 **quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 7
 3 **Rōmānus, -a, -um:** of Rome, Roman, 55
 3 **senātus, -ūs m.:** senate, council of elders, 21
 3 **sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, 7
 3 **tempus, temporis, n.:** time, occasion, 14
 4 **Allobrogēs, -um:** Allobroges, 11

- 4 **cōsilium, -iī n.:** plan, counsel, 12
- 4 **conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus:** come together, assemble, 6
- 4 **domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 15
- 4 **duo, duae, duo:** two, 12
- 4 **eō, ire, ivī, itum:** to go, come, 10
- 4 **existimō (1):** judge, consider, think, 13
- 4 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum:** to order, command, 15
- 4 **L.:** Lucius, 7
- 4 **mōns, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 20
- 4 **nihil:** nothing, 8
- 4 **nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, no one, 8
- 4 **omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 7
- 4 **oppidum, -ī n.:** town, 14
- 4 **parō (1):** prepare, make ready, 5
- 4 **perīculum, -ī n.:** risk, danger, peril, 10
- 4 **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take back, recover, 10
- 4 **rīpa, -ae f.:** bank, shore, 5
- 4 **singulus, -a, -um:** one by one, 5
- 4 **socius, -ī m.:** comrade, ally, companion, 9
- 4 **spēs, -ēī f.:** hope, expectation, 10
- 4 **trānseō, -ire, -ī (ivī), itus:** pass (by), 15
- 4 **ubi:** where, when, 11
- 4 **utī:** as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 27
- 4 **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum:** use, employ (*abl.*), 8
- 4 **vel:** or, either...or, 7
- 4 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see, 18
- 4 **vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs:** force, power, violence, 5
- 5 **adventus, -ūs m.:** arrival, approach, 7
- 5 **Caesar, -aris m.:** Caesar, 87
- 5 **certus, -a, -um:** certain, reliable, sure, 7
- 5 **concēdō, -ere;** go away, withdraw, yield, 5
- 5 **dum:** while, as long as, until, 5
- 5 **facultās, -tātis f.:** opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5
- 5 **imperō (1):** command, order, bid, 9
- 5 **iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 16
- 5 **lēgātus, -ī m.:** an envoy, legate, 23
- 5 **legiō, -ōnis f.:** legion, (4200 soldiers), 19
- 5 **licet: impers.,** it is allowed or permitted, 6
- 5 **memoria, -ae. f.:** memory, 6
- 5 **mīles, mīlitis, m.:** soldier, 17
- 5 **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus:** send, hurl, dismiss, 26
- 5 **nuntiō (1):** announce, report, 6
- 5 **pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus:** drive, push, 8
- 5 **perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** arrive, 8
- 5 **princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 9
- 5 **putō (1):** to think, imagine, 7
- 5 **respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum:** to answer, 10
- 5 **revertō, -ere, reversī:** turn back, return, 6
- 5 **rogō (1):** to ask; tell, 5
- 5 **sī:** if (only), whether, in case that, 49
- 5 **sine:** without (*abl.*), 12
- 5 **sub:** under, below, beneath, underneath, 7

- 5 **sumō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum**: take, spend 4
 5 **tamen**: however, nevertheless, 9
 5 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**: to hold, keep, 13
 5 **ūllus, -a, -um**: any, 5
 5 **volō, velle, voluī**: will, wish, be willing, 24
 5 **voluntās, -tātis f.**: will, wish, choice, 10
 6 **beneficium, -ī n.**: favor, benefit, kindness, 6
 6 **grātia, -ae f.**: gratitude; favor, thanks, 13
 6 **impetrō (1)**: obtain, accomplish, 5
 6 **itaque**: and so, 5
 6 **novus, -a, -um**: new, fresh, young, recent, 9
 6 **obsēs, obsidis m./f.**: hostage, 18
 6 **opus, -eris n.**: work, deed, toil, 6
 6 **ostendō, -ere, -ī, ntus**: show, promise, 5
 6 **patior, -ī, passus**: suffer, endure; allow, 6
 6 **pēs, pedis m.**: foot, 5
 6 **plūrimus, -a, -um**: most, very many, 6
 6 **praesidium, -iī n.**: guard, protection, 6
 6 **propter**: on account of, because of, 12
 6 **relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum**: to leave behind, 6
 6 **telum, -ī n.**: projectile, weapon, blow, 5
 6 **veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus**: come, go, 25
 7 **auxilium, -ī n.**: help, aid, assistance, 12
 7 **debeō, -ēre, -uī, debitum**: to owe, ought, 5
 7 **frūmentārius, -a, -um**: of grain, full of grain, 7
 7 **ibi**: there, in that place, 7
 7 **intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum**: to understand, 13
 7 **ita**: so, thus, 17
 7 **Labiēnus, ī m.**: Labienus, 7
 7 **liber, libera, liberum**: free, 6
 7 **prīmus -a -um**: first, 15
 7 **superus, -a, -um**: upper, higher, above, 5
 7 **trādūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum**: lead across, cross 9
 7 **trāns**: over, across (+ acc.), 7
 8 **Arar, -aris (acc.) -im (abl.) -ī m.**: Arar river (Saone), 5
 8 **calamitās, -tātis f.**: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5
 8 **castra, -ōrum n.**: camp, encampment, 41
 8 **explōrātor, -ōris m.**: scout, spy, 5
 8 **fortūna, -ae f.**: fortune, chance, luck, 6
 8 **fuga, -ae f.**: flight, haste, exile, speed, 12
 8 **hostis, -is m./f.**: stranger, enemy, foe, 38
 8 **iūdicō (1)**: judge, decide, assess, 6
 8 **mandō (1)**: order, command, commit, 6
 8 **nam**: for, 6
 8 **necessārius, -a, -um**: necessary, inevitable, 5
 8 **pūblicus, -a, -um**: public, common, 6
 8 **quartus, -a, -um**: the fourth, 5
 8 **sed**: but, moreover, however, 21
 8 **sīve, seu**: whether, or (if), 6
 8 **statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum**: set up, establish; decide, 5
 8 **vigilia, -ae f.**: watch (1/4 period of night), 5
 9 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum**: drive, lead, do, 8

- 9 **committō, -ere**: commence, commit entrust 10
 9 **commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, mōtum**: move, disturb, upset, 5
 9 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**: carry, bear, endure, 11
 9 **maior, maius**: greater, 7
 9 **quārē**: wherefore, therefore, why, 5
 9 **vetus, veteris**: old, experienced, 5
 10 **accidō, -ere, accidī**: to happen, fall to, 7
 10 **aliquī, -qua, -quod**: some, any, definite, 5
 10 **consuescō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum**: to accustom, 7
 10 **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**: to go away, depart, 7
 10 **diū**: a long time, long, 9
 10 **gravis, -e**: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9
 10 **polliceor, -cērī, -citus**: promise, offer, 6
 10 **tam**: so, so much, so very, such, 7
 10 **timeō, -ēre, timuī**: to be afraid, be scared, 5
 10 **tum**: then, at that time, 5
 11 **amplus, -a, -um**: ample, full, spacious, 7
 11 **circiter**: (round) about, not far from, 11
 11 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum**: to begin, 10
 11 **eques, equitis m.**: horseman, rider, 10
 11 **equitātus, -ūs m.**: cavalry, 17
 11 **modus, -ī m.**: way, manner; **modo** (adv.) only 7
 11 **paucī, -ae, -a**: little, few, scanty, 7
 11 **quidem**: indeed, in fact, certainly, 9
 11 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so large, 11
 12 **conferō, -ferre, -tulī**: bring together, gather, 9
 12 **dubitō (1)**: waver, be uncertain, hesitate, 5
 12 **potestās, potestātis f.**: power, influence, might, 5
 12 **praesum, -esse, -fuī**: be over, preside over, 5
 12 **queror, querī, questum**: complain, lament, 5
 12 **summus, -a, -um**: top of, highest (part of) 18
 12 **superō (1)**: surpass, overcome, 9
 13 **collocō (1)**: place together, arrange, set up, 5
 13 **concilium, -iī n.**: meeting, rendezvous, 6
 13 **contrā**: opposite, facing (acc.), 23
 13 **ille, illa, illud**: that, those, 19
 13 **nēmō, nūllūs, nēminī, -em, nūllō**: no one, 5
 13 **quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum**: to seek, ask, inquire, 8
 13 **reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum**: find (out), discover, 9
 14 **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum**: turn mind to, notice 6
 14 **C.**: Gaius, 7
 14 **cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum**: to learn, come to know, *perf.* know, 15
 14 **perterreō, -ēre, -terruī**: terrify thoroughly, 6
 14 **petō, petere, petīvī, petītum**: seek, aim at, 12
 14 **Valērius, -ī m.**: Valerius, 5
 16 **aciēs, -ēī f.**: sharp edge, battle line, army, 18
 16 **equus, -ī m.**: horse, 8
 16 **impetus, -ūs m.**: attack, onset, assault, 8
 16 **instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -structum**: equip, prepare, draw up, 6
 16 **timor, -oris m.**: fear, dread, anxiety, 9
 17 **agmen, agminis n.**: battle line, 5
 17 **impedīmentum, -ī n.**: baggage, impediment, 5

- 17 **muniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum**: to fortify, build, 5
 18 **commodus, -a, -um**: convenient, suitable, 5
 18 **manus, manūs, f.**: hand; group, 5
 18 **pugnō (1)**: to fight, 10
 18 **referō, ferre, tulī, lātum**: report bring back 6
 18 **signum -ī, n.**: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5
 18 **vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum**: conquer, defeat, 14
 19 **coiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**: to hurl, throw together, 5
 19 **intermittō, -ere**: to interrupt, discontinue, intervene, 5
 19 **nox, noctis, f.**: night, 6
 20 **redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**: to bring back, 6
 20 **salūs, -ūtis f.**: safety, refuge; health, 5
 21 **ratio, ratiōnis, f.**: calculation, account, 5
 22 **inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum**: wage, carry on, 13
 22 **nisi**: if not, unless 5
 22 **ūsus, -ūs m.**: use, practice; advantage, 6
 23 **barbarus, -a, -um**: foreign, savage, 5
 23 **iterum**: again, a second time, 5
 23 **postulō (1)**: demand, claim, request, ask, 12
 24 **Ariovistus, -ī m.**: Ariovistus, leader of the Germans, 41
 24 **barbarus, -a, -um**: foreign, savage, 5
 24 **consīdeō, -ēre, -sēdī**: to sit down, settle, 5
 24 **consuētūdo, -inis f.**: custom, habit, 6
 24 **diūtior**: a long time, long, 9
 26 **colloquium, -iī n.**: conversation, talk, 13
 26 **uterque, utraque, utrumque**: each (of two) 7
 28 **stipendium, -iī n.**: pay; military service, 5
 29 **celer, -eris, -ere**: swift, quick, 5
 29 **contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum**: hold or keep together, 5
 32 **decimus, a, um**: tenth, 5
 32 **iam**: now, already, soon, 8

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

1.1 Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, 1
 aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

2. Hī omnēs linguā, īstitutīs, legibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs
 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

3. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque 5
 hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs
 saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent
 important, 4. Proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
 quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvetiī quoque reliquōs
 Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs 10
 contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus
 bellum gerunt.

5. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā
 flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum,
 attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum, vergit ad 15
 septentriōnēs. 6. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad
 inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem
 sōlem. 7. Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrenaeōs montēs et eam partem
 Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et
 septentriōnēs. 20

Aquitānī, -ōrum m.: Aquitani, 2
Aquitania, -ae f.: Aquitania, 1
attīngō, -ere, attīgī, attāctus: touch, reach, border, 1
Celtae, -ārum m.: Celts, 1
commeō (1): to travel, go to and fro, 1
contīnēō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 4
cotīdiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 2
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 2
differō, -ferre, -ferre: differ, carry different ways, 1
effēminō (1): soften, make into women, 1
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 3
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 4
fortis, -e: strong, brave, valiant, 2
Garumna, -ae f.: Garumna river, 3
Hispānia, -ae f.: Spain, 1
hūmānitās, hūmānitātis f.: humanity, culture,
 refinement, 2
importō (1): bring in, introduce, import, 1
inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 1

initium, -ī n.: beginning, entrance, 3
īstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3
lēx, lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 3
longus -a, -um: long, 4
Mātrōna, -ae f.: Matrona (Marne) river, 1
mercātor, -ōris m.: merchant, trader, 2
minimē: least of all, least, 2
occāsus, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2
Ōceanus, ī m.: Oceanus, 2
orior, -īrī, ortus: arise, rise, spring, 3
praecēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: surpass, 1
Pyrenaeus, -a, -um: of the Pyrenees, 1
quoque: also, 1
septentriōnēs, -um m.: north, (7 stars), 4
Sēquana, -ae: Sequana (Seine) River, 1
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 4
spectō (1): watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3
vergō, -ere, versī: turn, bend, 1

- 1 **est...dīvīsa**: *is divided*; dīvīsa is a predicate adjective and not part of a perfect pass. verb
quārum ūnam...aliā...tertiā: *of which (parts) one (part)...another (part)...a third (part)*; a genitive at the beginning of the clause is often, as here, a partitive gen. (gen. of whole)
- 2 **Aquītānī**: *Aquitanians (inhabit)*; add incolunt which is missing through ellipsis (omission)
Tertiā (incolunt) quī...: *(those) who... (inhabit) the third*; the missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject of missing incolunt
ipsōrum linguā: *in the language of (these) very ones*; i.e. of the Gauls, ipse usually modifies a noun, which is missing and must be supplied; linguā is an ablative of respect (in respect to...)
nostrā: *in our (language)*; supply linguā
Celtae...Gallī: nom. predicates of appellatur
- 3 **linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus**: *in...in...in...*; “in respect to...,” all three are abl. of respect
- 4 **Garumna flūmen (dīvidit)**: nom. subject, add dīvidit from the next clause
Matrona et Sēquana: nom. pl. with a 3rd sg. verb because the rivers form a single boundary; supply Gallōs as acc. direct object
- 5 **Hōrum omnium**: *of all these*; or “among all these,” partitive gen., as in line 1, Caesar often uses a a genitive at the beginning of a clause and then specifies the parts within the clause
propterea quod: *because*; lit. “on this account because,” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)
- 6 **Provinciae**: *of the Province*; i.e. Gallia Transalpina, the area in southern France controlled by the Romans. Although the word prōvincia is a general term, the Romans referred to this province as “the Province”. This edition uses the capital “P” to distinguish it from other provinces.
- 6 **longissimē**: *very far*; superlative adverb longē
ad eōs *to those...*; eōs is demonstrative
- 7 **ea quae** *those things which...*; neut. pl.
- ad effēminandōs...**: *for softening...*; lit. “for courage going to be softened” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple) often expresses purpose; when translating, readers should employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate the gerundive as a gerund (e.g. softening) and the noun modified by the gerundive as an object of the gerund
- 8 **Germānīs**: dat. with special adj. proximī
- 9 **quibuscum**: cum quibus
Quā dē causā: *for which reason*; “concerning which reason” quā modifies causā; as often, Caesar places the adjective, here a relative adj., before the preposition
- 10 **virtūte**: *in (respect to) valor*; abl. respect
quod: *because*
cum...prohibent...gerunt: *since...*; cum + indicative, not a preposition of suīs finibus.
- 11 **suīs finibus**: *from their borders*; abl. of separation (a construction which includes but is not limited to place from which), governed by prohibent, “(Helvetians) keep”
suīs: *their*; Helvetians’, reflexive possessive
eōs: *them*; i.e. Germans, personal pronoun
ipsī: *(they) themselves*; Helvetians
- 12 **eōrum**: *their*; i.e. Germans
- 13 **eōrum**: *of these (three parts)*; partitive gen.
obtinēre: ind. discourse (that clause), Gallōs is acc. subj. and quam is acc. d.o.
dictum est: *it has been said*; as in line 2 above
- 14 **continētur**: governs all three abl. of means, which are missing conjunctions, asyndeton
- 15 **ab Sēquānīs...**: *from (the side of)...*
- 16 **oriuntur**: *rise*; pres. deponent, orior
- 17 **spectant in septentrionem**: *looks to the northern...*; i.e. opens up to the northeast
orientem: *eastern*; “rising” sun; pres. pple.
- 18 **eam partem**: *that part*; demonstrative
- 19 **ad Hispaniam**: *near Hispania*; with est
spectat: *looks to...*; i.e. opens up to...

Gerund-Gerundive Flip

A gerundive (effeminandus,-a,-um in line 7) is a future passive participle. It is an adjective which agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Because it is awkward to translate (e.g. going to be softened), readers should employ a “gerund-gerundive flip” and translate the gerundive as a gerund, a verbal noun (e.g. softening), and the noun modified by the gerundive as the gerund’s object. This is a popular construction in Caesar. So, be prepared.

Ad animōs effēminandōs	Flip	ad effēminandum animōs
<i>For courage (going) to be softened</i>	→	<i>for softening courage</i>

2.1 Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. 1
 Messālā, et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, regnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem
 nōbilitātis fēcit et civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiīs
 exīrent: 2. perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae
 imperiō potīrī. 5

3. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undīque locī natūrā Helvetiī
 continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēno lātissimō atque altissimō, quī
 agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō,
 quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodānō,
 quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiīs dividit. 4. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus 10
 lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent; 5. Quā ex
 parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 6. Prō multitudīne
 autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre
 arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem
 CLXXX patēbant. 15

3.1 Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea
 quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum
 quam maximum numerum coemere, sementēs quam maximās facere, ut in
 itinere cōpia frumentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et
 amīcitiā cōfirmāre. 2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse 20
 dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: to affect, afflict, 3
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1
altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 2
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 2
auctōritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 4
bellō (1): to wage war, fight, 1
biennium, -ī n.: a period of two years, 1
coemō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: buy up, 1
comparō (1): prepare, acquire, get ready, 4
coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.: conspiracy, pact, 1
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 4
cupiditās, -tātis f.: desire, eagerness for, 3
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 4
dīs, dītis adj: rich, wealthy, 1
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, anger, passion, 3
fortitudō, -dinis f.: strength, courage, 1
glōria, -ae, f.: glory, fame, 1
inducō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum: to lead in, bring in, 2
iumentum, -ī n.: beast of burden, harnessed animals, 1
Iūra, -ae f.: Iura (a mountain range), 3

lacus, -ūs m.: lake, pond, pool, 2
lātitudō, -inis f.: width, breadth, 1
lātus, -a, -um: wide, 2
Lemannus, -ī m.: (w/ lacus) Lake Geneva, 2
lēx, lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
longitūdo, -inis f.: length, width, 1
longus -a, -um: long, 4
Messāl(1)a, -ae m.: Messala (M. Valerius Messala), 2
nātūra, -ae, f.: nature, 3
nōbilitās, -tātis f.: nobility, renown, 2
pateō, -ēre, -uī: lie open, extend, 2
perfacilis, -e: very easy; *adv.* very easily 2
permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: upset, move deeply, 1
potior, -īrī, -ītus: gain possession of, possess (*abl.*), 4
praestō, -āre, -stīfī, -stītus: to perform; show, 2
profectiō, -ōnis f.: departure, 2
sementis, -is f.: sowing, planting, 1
suppetō, -ere, īvī, ītum: suffice, be at hand 2
undīque: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 3
vagor, -ārī: wander, roam, go to and fro, 1

- 1 **nōbilissimus, ditissimus**: superlative adjs.
fuit: pf. sum, esse
M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus: *when Marcus Messala and Marcus (Pupius) Piso were consuls*; “with Messala and Piso (being) consuls” abl. abs. i.e. 61 BC, Romans named the year after their annually elected consuls; since there is no pple. for sum, esse, the subject and predicate are the abl. abs.
- 2 **regnī**: *for the kingship*; objective gen. governed by cupiditāte, equivalent to “he desires kingship
- 3 **persuāsit ut...**: *persuaded (dative) that...*; this common verb in Caesar governs an indirect command (ut + impf. subj. in secondary seq.)
- 4 **exīrent**: *they come out*; impf. subjunctive, exeō, exīre in an ind. command, which can often be translated as an inf.: “persuaded...to come out”
perfacile esse...: *(and) that it is very easy...*; ind. discourse also governed by persuāsit above; asyndeton, supply a conjunction between the ind. command above and perfacile esse
cum...praestārent: *since they excelled*; causal with impf. subjunctive governing abl. respect
tōtius: gen. sg. (-ius) modifying Galliae
- 5 **potīrī**: *to possess*; dep. inf. potior governs an ablative object
- 6 **id...persuāsit**: *he persuaded them (to do) this*
hōc...quod: *by this (reason)...because*; abl. of cause
facilius: comparative adv. facilis, facile
- 7 **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; “from one part”
flūmine Rhēnō: abl. means; supply the verb “continentur,” an example of ellipsis
- 8 **agrum Helvētium**: *Helvetian land*
alterā ex parte: *on another side*; see line 7
monte Iūrā: *by Iura range*; add “continentur”
- 9 **tertīā (ex parte)**: parallel with line 7 and 8
lacū Lemannō: abl. means, add “continentur”
- 10 **hīs rēbus**: *because of...*; abl. of cause
fiēbant ut: *it happened that...*; fiō governs ut + impf. subjunctive (noun result clause); the subjunctives are impf. in secondary sequence because the main verb is impf.
- 11 **vagārentur, possent**: impf. subj. vagor and possum; in result clauses these are translated as normal impf. indicatives; vagor is deponent
minus: comparative adverb; minor, minus
- 11 **facile**: *easily*; irreg. adverb from facilis, facile
fnītimīs: *on neighbors*; dat. of compound verb (the infinitive inferre)
quā ex parte: *for which reason*; “from which respect”
- 12 **bellandī**: *of waging war*; gerund, gen. sg. with the adj. cupidī which in turn modifies hominēs
Prō...prō: *because of...*; “in proportion to” or “according to,” prō is causal in force
- 13 **sē habēre**: *that they had*; ind. discourse in secondary sequence: angustōs fnēs is acc. d.o.
- 14 **milia passuum**: *miles*; “thousands of paces,” a mile is 1000 steps; subject of patēbant
- 16 **adductī...permōtī**: *Helvetians influenced... and moved*; the participles are nom. pl. agreeing with a missing subject
ea quae: *those (things) which*; ea is object of comparāre and is translated as a demonstrative
- 17 **ea quae...pertinērent**: *those (things) which pertain*; relative clause of characteristic is often used to limit and characterize general antecedents (i.e. ea) and governs an impf. subj. in secondary sequence
ad proficiscendum: *for setting out*; gerund (verbal noun) + ad expresses purpose
comparāre, coemere, facere, confirmāre: complementary infinitives with cōstituērunt, supply the missing conjunction “et”
- 18 **quam maximum**: *as great...as possible*; quam + superlative is frequently translated “as X as possible,” here it modifies numerum
quam maximās: see above, with sementēs
ut...suppeteret: *so that...might suffice*; ut + impf. subj., purpose clause in secondary seq.
ad...conficiendās: *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying rēs) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and eās rēs as the object of the gerund
biennium...esse: *that...*; ind. discourse
sibi: *for themselves*; dat. of interest/advantage
- 21 **in...annum**: *into the...*; i.e. “during,” 58 BC

Translating Subjunctives

With the exception of purpose clauses (*may, might*) and conditional sentences (*if should, would; if were, would; if had, would have*; see pg. 19), almost all the subjunctive constructions that readers will encounter do not require a special translation in English. Readers should simply identify the tense (see verb synopses, pp. 74-81) and translate the subjunctive just as one would an indicative. Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives are the most common tenses in secondary sequence.

3.3 Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad 1
 cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō,
 Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā
 senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā
 occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; 4. itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, fratrī 5
 Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plebī
 acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet eīque filiam suam in
 matrimōnium dat. 5. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere,
 proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: 6. nōn esse
 dūbium quin tōtūs Galliae plūrimum Helvetiī possent; sē suīs copiīs suōque 10
 exercitū illīs regna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. 7. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē
 fidem et iusiūrandum dant et regnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac
 firmissimōs populōs tōtūs Galliae sēsē potīrī posse sperant.

4.1 Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgēm
 ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut 15
 ignī cremārētur.

2. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iudicium omnem suam
 familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undīque coēgit, et omnēs clientēs
 obaeratōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit;
 per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. 3. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armis 20
 iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multītūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs
 cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; 4. neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvetiī
 arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem conscīverit.

Casticus, -ī m.: Casticus, 1

Catamantaloedis, -is m.: Catamantaloedis, 1

cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 2

conciliō (1): win over, unite, 1

condūcō, -ere: bring together, gather, 1

conscīcō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum: to agree on, decree, 1

cremō (1): burn, consume by fire, 1

damnō (1): condemn, punish, convict, 1

decem: ten, 3

diciō, diciōnis f.: sway, power, sovereignty, 2

dubius, -a, -um: doubtful, wavering, 1

ēripiō, -ere, -uī, reptus: rescue, take from, 4

exsequor, sequī, secūtum: follow/carry out 1

factū: to do (supine), 1

familia, -ae f.: family, household, 2

filia, -iae f.: daughter, 4

filius, -iī m.: son; child, 3

firmus, -a, -um: strong, steadfast, 2

ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 2

incitō (1): urge on, incite, 1

indicium, -iī n.: information, evidence, 1

iudicium, -iī n.: decision, judgment; trial 4

iūrandus, a, -um: to be sworn (iūs iūrandum: oath), 4

lēgatio, -ōnis f.: embassy, envoy, 4

magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 4

mātrimōnium, -iī n.: marriage, matrimony, 2

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum: to die, 1

mors, mortis, f.: death, 3

mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 2

obaerātus, -a, -um: indebted, 1

perfacilis, -e: very easy; *adv.* very easily 2

plebs, plēbis, f.: common people, masses, 3

poena, poenae, f.: punishment, penalty, 3

potēns (potentis): powerful, influential, 2

potior, -iī, -ītus: gain possession of, possess (*abl.*), 4

principātus, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 4

probō (1): approve, commend, 1

spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 2

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, receive, 4

suspiciō, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4

undīque: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 3

vinculum, -ī n.: bond, chain, 1

- 1 **ad...conficiendās**: *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying *rēs*) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and *eās rēs* as the object of the gerund
sibi: *for himself*; dat. of interest/advantage
- 2 **eō**: *this*; demonstrative pronoun
persuādet Casticō...ut: *persuades Casticus... that*; verb governs dat. and ind. command
- 3 **cuius**: *whose*; gen. sg. relative pronoun
multōs annōs: *for...*; acc. of duration
- 4 **appellātus erat**: *had been named*; + predicate nominative; the verb behaves as a linking verb
ut...occupāret: *that he occupy*; ind. command with *persuādet* can often, but not always, be translated as an infinitive: “to occupy...”
- 5 **quod...habuerit**: pf. subj., relative clause of characteristic, the antecedent is *regnum Dumnorīgī Haeduō*: (*he persuades*) *Dumnorix the Aeduan*; dat. i.o. of missing *persuādet* in a construction parallel to *Casticō* above
- 6 **eō tempore**: *at...*; abl. of time when
maximē...acceptus erat: *had been especially (well) received*; governs a dative of agent (by...)
- 7 **ut...cōnārētur**: *that...*; ind. command governed by *persuādet*; impf. deponent *cōnārētur*
idem: *the same thing*; id-dem, neuter acc. d.o., i.e. *ut...occupāret* in ll. 4-5
eī: *to him*; dat. sg. indirect object with dat
- 8 **perfacile...esse...perficere**: *that it is...*; ind. disc. governed by *probat*; *perficere* is inf. subject and *perfacile* is the pred. adj.
factū: *to do*; “in doing” abl. sg. supine (PPP stem + *ū*) is an abl. of respect qualifying the adj. *perfacile*, “very easy”
illis: *for those (men)*; dat. interest
conāta: *the things attempted*; PPP, neuter pl.
- 9 **proptereā quod**: *because*; lit. “on this account because” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)
ipse: (*he*) *himself*; i.e. Orgetorix
obtentūrus esset: *would attain*; “would be going to attain,” fut. pple + sum (here impf. subj.) is a periphrastic fut. form; verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect disc. are very often placed in the subjunctive
nōn esse dūbium: (*that*) *he did not doubt but that...*; “he was not doubtful,” ind. discourse
- 10 **plūrimum possent**: *would have very much power*; common idiom in Caesar, impf. subj.
- 11 **conciliātūrum (esse)**: *that they will win over*; fut. infinitive; ind. disc., *sē* is acc. subj.
- 12 **ius-iurandum**: *a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive *iurō*, *-āre*
- 13 **tōtūis**: *of the entire*; gen. sg. with *Galliae*
sēsē: *that they*; acc. subject of *posse*
potīrī: *to possess*; dep. inf., *regnō* as abl. obj.
- 14 **Ea rēs**: *this matter*; i.e. Orgetorix's conspiracy
est...ēnūtiāta: *ēnūtiāta est*; pf. passive
per indicium: i.e. through spies and informers
mōribus suis: *according to their customs*; “from their customs,” often with “ex” denotes a source of action (separation) not abl. cause
- 15 **causam dicere**: *to plead (his) case*; idiom
damnātum...sequī: *that (he) if condemned follow...*; deponent inf., PPP is conditional
oportēbat: *it was necessary that*; impersonal
ut...cremārētur: *that...*; ind. command
ignī: ablative of means; i-stem 3rd decl. noun
- 17 **diē cōstitūtā**: *on the...*; abl. of time when
causae dictiōnis: *for the pleading of the case*
ad...mīlia decem: *around*; ad means “up to” or “nearly” throughout this passage
- 18 **coēgit**: *gathered*; *cōgō* (co-agō) means (a) compel or (b) drive together; cf. ll. 15 and 22
- 19 **eōdem**: *in the same (place)*; abl. place where
- 20 **nē...diceret**: *so that...not*; neg. purpose. cf. 15
cum...conārētur...cōgerent: *after...*; cum clause with two impf. subjunctives
exsequī: pres. dep. infinitive, *exsequor*
ob eam rem: *on account of this matter*
- 22 **mortuus est**: *died*; pf. deponent, *moriōr*
ut...: *as*; common translate with indicative
- 23 **quin sibi...consciverit**: *that he brought...on himself*; pf. subj. *consciscō*

5.1 Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīī id quod cōstituerant facere 1
 cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exeant. 2. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse
 arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad
 quadringentōs, reliqua p̄tīvāta aedificia incendunt; 3. frūmentum omne,
 praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum redītīōnis spē 5
 sublātā parātīōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mensum molīta
 cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et
 Latobrīgīs finitimīs utī, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs ūnā
 cum eīs proficīscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum
 Noricum transīerant Noreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi 10
 adsciscunt.

6.1 Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum
 per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen
 Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus
 impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; 2. alterum per provinciam 15
 nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs
 Helvētīōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper p̄cāfī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque
 nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsītur.

3. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētīōrum finibus
 Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētīōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel 20
 persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,
 existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus
 rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī
 omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō
 cōnsulibus. 25

A.: Aulus, 1
aedificium, -ī n.: building, edifice, 1
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1
altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 2
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 2
April, Aprilis m.: April, 2
asciscō, -ere, ascīvī, -scītum: to take to, add, 1
Boii, -ōrum m.: Boians (Bohemians) 4
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind(ly), useful 2
cibāria, -ōrum n.: rations, rationed food, 1
comburō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn up, 1
comparō (1): prepare, acquire, get ready, 4
difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 2
duodecim: twelve, 1
efferō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus: raise, lift up 1
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 3
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 3
exūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstum: to burn up, consume, 1

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus: flow, 2
Gabinus, -ī m.: Gabinius, 1
Genava, -ae f.: Geneva, 3
hūc: to this place, hither, here 1
impendeō, -ēre: hang over, threaten, 1
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 2
Iūra, -ae f.: Iura (a mountain range), 3
Kal.: Kalends, 1
Latovīcī, -ōrum m.: Latovicians, 3
mensis, -is m.: month, 3
moliō, -īrī, molītum: set into motion, stir, 1
mors, mortis, f.: death, 3
nōndum: not yet, 2
Noreia, -ae f.: Noreia, 1
Noricum, -ī m.: Noricum (modern Austria) 2
nūper: recently, lately, newly, 3
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3
p̄cō (1): to placify, subdue, 1

pateō, -ēre, -uī: lie open, extend, 2
perpaucī, -ae, -a: very few, 2
pōns, pontis m.: a bridge, 3
portō (1): carry, bear, bring, 1
post: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 2
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 3
prīvātus, -a, -um: personal, private, 2
profectio, -ōnis f.: departure, 2
quadringenti: four hundred, 1
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 3

Raurācī, -ōrum: Rauraci, 2
reditiō, -ōnis f.: return, going back, 1
subeō, -īre, -ī, -itum: approach, undergo, 2
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 4
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 4
V.: Valerius, 1
vadum, -ī n.: shallows, shoal, ford, 2
vīcus, -ī m.: village, town, 4
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 1

- 1 **eius:** *his*; i.e. Orgetorix, gen. sg.
nihilō minus: *no less*; “less by nothing,” comp. adverb; nihilō is abl. degree of difference
id quod: *that which*; id is object of *facere*
2 **ut...exeant:** (*namely*) *that...*; pres. subj. *exeō*, in a noun purpose clause in apposition to id
ad eam rem: *for this matter*; expresses purpose
sē: *that they*; acc. subject of *parātōs esse*
3 **arbitrāfī sunt:** pf. deponent
numerō: *in number*; abl. of respect
ad: *around*; “up to” or “nearly”
5 **praeter quod:** *except (that) which...*
sēcum: *cum sē*
portātūrī erant: *were going to carry*; periphrastic fut. (fut. act. pple + impf. sum)
ut...essent: *so that...*; result, impf. sum
spē sublātā: *with hope having been carried off*; abl. absolute, pf. pass. pple from *tollō*
6 **ad...subeunda:** *for approaching...*; “for all dangers going to be approached,” a gerundive *subeō* + ad expresses purpose and is best translated through a gerund-gerundive flip as a gerund + object: “for approaching all dangers”
molīta: *ground*; i.e. flour, PPP “set in motion”
8 **ūtī...proficiscantur:** *that...*; an alternative spelling for *ut* (note: the pres. inf. for *ūtō* is *ūtī* with an initial long-u); introducing an ind. command with pres. subj.
ūsī: *having employed*; nom. pl. PPP, deponent *ūtō* governs an ablative object
ūnā: *altogether*; adverb formed from an abl.
10 **trānsierant:** pluperfect of *trānseō*
sōciōs: (*as*) *allies*; in apposition to *Boiōsque*
12 **erant:** *there were*

- itīnera:** *routes*
quibus...possent: *by which...*; rel. clause of characteristic; impf. subj. of *possum*, *quibus* is a relative adj. with *itineribus*, which is redundant and may be left untranslated
domō: *from home*; place from which
ūnum: *one (route)*; in apposition to *itīnera*
14 **quā:** *by which (way)*; or “where,” abl. as adv.
quā...dūcerentur: relative clause of characteristic with impf. subjunctive, the path is so narrow that carts must pass one at a time
15 **ut...possent:** *so that*; result clause, impf. subj.
facile: *easily*; irregular 3rd decl. adv. *facilis*, -e
alterum (īter): *the other (route)*; in apposition to *itīnera* (line 12) and parallel to “ūnum”
16 **multō:** *much*; lit. “by much”, abl. degree of difference modifies comparative adjectives
facilius atque expeditius: comparative adjs., neuter singular modifying “alterum (īter)”
propterea quod: *because*; 3rd instance so far
18 **vadō:** *in the shallows*; “in a ford”; place where
20 **sēsē...persuāsūrōs (esse)...coactūrōs (esse):** *that they would persuade or compel*; fut. inf.
21 **bonō animō:** *seemed not yet of good will to...*; abl. of quality in the predicative position
22 **vī:** irregular ablative of means, *vīs*
paterentur: *they (Allobrogēs) allow*; impf. subj. of the deponent *patior* (3rd-io)
23 **diem dīcunt quā diē:** *they name the day on which (day)...*; ablative time when
24 **a(nte) d(iem) V. Kal(ends) Apr(ilis):** *5th day before the Kalends of April*; March 28th, 58
L. Pisōne...cōsulibus: abl. abs; add “being”

7.1 Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere 1
 cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in
 Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. 2. Prōvinciae tōtī
 quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā
 ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī. 5
 3. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, legātōs ad eum mittunt
 nobilīssimōs civitātis, cuius legātiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem
 locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per
 prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius
 voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium 10
 consulem occīsū exercitūque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum
 missum, cōncēdendum nōn putābat; 4. neque hōminēs inimīcō animō, datā
 facultāte per provinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et
 maleficiō existimābat. 5. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs
 quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem se ad dēlīberandum 15
 sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

April, Aprilis m.: April, 2

Cassius, -ī m.: Cassius, 3

dēlīberō (1): consider, consult, weigh, 1

Genava, -ae f.: Geneva, 3

inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 2

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: come or go between, 3

iugum, -ī n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 4

lēgatio, -ōnis f.: embassy, envoy, 4

maleficiū, -iī n.: wrongdoing, crime, 3

mātūrō (1): to hasten, make haste, 2

Nammeius, -iī m.: Nammeius, 1

occīdō, -ere, occidī, occīsus: kill, cut down 4

pōns, pontis m.: a bridge, 3

rescindō, -ere, scidī, scissum: cut back, 1

spatium, -iī n.: space, room, extent, 4

temperō (1): refrain from, keep from, 2

ulterior, -ius: farther, 4

urbs, urbis, f.: city, 2

Verucloētius, iī m.: Verucloetius, 1

- 1 **Caesarī**: *to Caesar*; Caesar talks about himself in the 3rd person; dat. sg. of *nūntiātum esset*
nūntiātum esset: plpf. pass. subjunctive in a temporal clause with *cum*, “after” or “when”
id...eōs...cōnārī: *this...(namely) that they attempt*; acc. subject and deponent inf. (indirect disc.) in apposition to *id*
- 2 **quam...itineribus**: *in as rapid marches as possible*; “with the greatest marches as it is possible,” *quam* + superlative is “as X as possible,” *potest* is impersonal: “it is possible”
- 3 **Gallia ulteriōrem**: *further Gaul*; i.e. the Province (Transalpine Gaul) in southern France
contendit: *hastens*
- 4 **Prōvinciae tōtī...imperat**: *ordered from the entire Province...*; dat. indirect object; *tōtī* is dat. sg. of *tōtus* (gen. *tōtūs*)
quam...numerum: *as great a number of soldiers possible*; “a greatest number of soldiers as it is able;” see line 2
- 4 **imperat....(et) pontem...iubet**: supply the missing conjunction “et,” asyndeton, which suggests that Caesar is quick and decisive
- 5 **ad Genavam**: *near Geneva*
rescindī: present passive infinitive
- 6 **eius**: *his*; i.e. Caesar’s
certiōrēs factī sunt: *were informed*; “were made more certain”, common idiom in Caesar, *certiōrēs* is a pred. nominative
- 7 **cuius legātiōnis**: *of which embassy*; rel. adj.
- 8 **quī dicerent**: *who would say...*; relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. *dīcō*, which one may translate as a regular purpose clause: “to say...”
sibi esse in animō: *that he had in mind*; + inf., “there is to him in mind,” dat. of possession
- 9 **propterea quod**: *because*; lit. “on this account because,” 4th and final instance of this phrase
habērent: *they had*; impf. subj., subordinate clauses within indirect discourse govern verbs in the subjunctive
rogāre ut...liceret: *they asked that it be allowed...*; historical inf. and ind. command
eius voluntāte: *with his permission*
- 10 **memoriā tenēbat**: *in memory*; abl. of means, a common idiom for “he recalled” or “he remembered”
L. Cassium...occīsum (esse), exercitumque ...pulum (esse)...missum (esse): two separate instances of indirect discourses (two acc. subjects) governed by *tenēbat*, supply *esse* to form pf. passive infinitives
- 11 **occīsum (esse)**: *had been killed*; pf. pass. inf.
pulum (esse): pf. pass. inf. *pellō*
sub iugum missum (esse): *had been sent under the yoke*; i.e. had been enslaved
- 12 **cōncēdendum nōn (esse sibi)**: *that he must not yield*; “that it is not going to be yielded by him,” a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of *sum*) which expresses obligation or necessity, often with a dative of agent
hominēs...temperātūrōs (esse): *that people...would not refrain*; fut. inf. governed by *existimābat*
inimicō animō: *of hostile intent*; abl. of description modifying *hominēs*
datā facultāte: ablativ absolute
- 13 **itineris faciendī**: *of making a journey*; “of a journey going to be made” gerundive modifies gen. iter which is better translated through a gerundive-gerund flip
ab inūriā..maleficiō: *from...*; abl. separation with *temperātūrōs (esse)*
- 14 **ut spatium...posset**: *so that...*; purpose clause with impf. subj.; *spatium* is subject
- 15 **sē...sūmptūrum (esse)**: *that he...*; indirect discourse, supply *esse* for the future inf.
ad dēliberandum: *for deliberating*; ad + gerund expressing purpose, which can also be translated as an infinitive: “to deliberate”
- 16 **quid**: *anything*; *aliquis, aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but *quis, quid* is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after *sī, nisi, num, and nē*. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After *sī, nisi, num, and nē*, all the *ali*’s go away” (in other words indefinite *aliquid* becomes just *quid*)
sī...vellent,...reverterentur: *if they should wish, they could return...*; in direct disc. a future less vivid condition (*sī* pres. subj., pres. subj.) which are placed in impf. subjunctive in indirect discourse in secondary sequence
ad Id(ūs) April(is): *near the Ides of April*; the 13th of April, the Ides denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon; *Idūs* is 4th decl. acc. pl. and *Aprilis* is gen. sg.

8.1 Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex Prōvinciā 1
 convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem
 Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem
 novem, mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. 2. Eō
 opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē 5
 invītō transīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

3. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit et lēgātī ad eum
 revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per
 Prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. 4. Helvētiī
 eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iunctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs 10
 Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius
 noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et
 tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9.1 Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter
 angustias īre nōn poterant. 2. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, 15
 lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs
 impetrārent. 3. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum
 poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in
 matrimōnium dūxerat et, cupiditate regnī adductus, nōvīs rēbus studēbat et
 quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. 4. Itaque 20
 rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur,
 obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs
 prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

altitūdō, -inis f.: height, depth, altitude, 3
angustia, -ae f.: narrowness, straitness, 4
castellum, -ī n.: fortress, stronghold, fort, citadel, 1
communiō, -īre, -iī, -itum: to fortify strongly, 1
complūres n.: several, 4
conātus, -ūs m.: attempt, effort, 1
concursum, -ūs m.: running together, gathering, 1
cupiditās, -tātis f.: desire, eagerness for, 3
decem: ten, 3
dēiectiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: hurl down 1
dēprecātor, -ōris m.: interceder, one who intercedes, 1
dēsistō, -ere, -stītī: desist, cease, give up, 4
dispōnō, -ere: arrange distribute, 1
exemplum, -ī n.: example, 2
fīlia, -iae f.: daughter, 4
fossa, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 1
inflūō, -ere, inflūxī: to flow in, 3
interdiū: by day, during the day, 1
interdum: sometimes, now and then, 2
invītus, -a, -um: unwilling, 3
iungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum: join, attach, 2

Iūra, -ae f.: Iura (a mountain range), 3
lacus, -ūs m.: lake, pond, pool, 2
largitiō, -tiōnis f.: generosity, giving much; bribery, 1
Lemannus, -ī m.: (w/ lacus) Lake Geneva, 2
maleficiū, -iī n.: wrongdoing, crime, 3
mātrimōnium, -iī n.: marriage, matrimony, 2
minimus, -a, -um: very little, 2
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 2
mūnitiō, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving, 3
mūrus, -ī m.: (city) wall, rampart, 2
nāvis, nāvis, f.: ship, boat, 2
negō (1): to deny, say that...not, 1
noctū: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 1
novem: nine, 1
numquam: never, 3
obstringō, -ere, -stringī, -strictum: to confine, bind, 1
perdūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: lead through 1
perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: break through, 1
ratis, ratis f.: raft, 2
repellō, -ere, reppulī, -pulum: drive back, repulse, 1
sēdecim: sixteen, 2

sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2
studeō, -ēre, uī: be eager, strive after, 1
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, receive, 4

vadum, -ī n.: shallows, shoal, ford, 2
via, -ae, f.: road, way, path, 3

- 1 **sēcum:** cum sē; sē is a 3rd person reflexive pronoun, which refers to the subject (mnemonic: ‘s’ as in ‘Subject’)
- 3 **finēs:** borders; ‘ends’ or ‘territory’
mīlia passuum decem novem: *for... miles;* ‘thousands of paces;’ acc. of extent of space
decem novem: XIX; typically there is an ‘et’ joined these two numbers, modifies mīlia
- 4 **in altitudinem:** (*up*) to a height...
pedum sēdecim: *of...;* gen. of quality
perducit: *draws up;* i.e. ‘builds;’ the verb dūcō is often used for digging and building walls (‘to draw up a wall’); here the wall and ditch form a sheer fact of 16 feet; as often, Caesar is subject of 3rd sg. verbs without a subject
Eō...perfectō: abl. absolute; eō as an adjective is demonstrative: translate as ‘this’ or ‘that’
- 5 **dispōnit (et)...commūnit:** asyndeton (lack of conjunction) emphasizes Caesar’s decisiveness
quō...possit: *that... may be able...;* adverbial purpose clauses may begin with ‘ut’ or ‘quo’ (‘whereby’ = ut eō, ‘that thereby’)
facilius: comparative adverb
sē invītō: abl. absolute; add ‘being,’ without a pple for sum, subject and pred. assume the abl.
- 6 **cōnārentur:**
- 8 **negat:** *he says that... not;* or ‘denies that’
sē...posse...dare: *that...;* indirect discourse, translate dare as ‘to grant’ or ‘to allow’
mōre et exemplō: *by...;* i.e. ‘in accordance with...’; abl. of cause
ūllī: dat. sg. of ūllus (gen. ūllīus, dat. ūllī)
- 9 **vim facere:** *to carry out force;* ‘use force’
prohibitūrum (esse): fut. inf., supply Caesar as subject
- 10 **nāvibus...factīs:** two ablative absolutes
aliī...: *others;* in apposition to Helvētīi: some crossed by boat, others crossed on foot
vadīs: *in the shallows,* abl. of place where
- 11 **quā:** *where*
nōn numquam: *sometimes;* ‘not never,’
- litotes, parallel to the adverb saepius
saepius: comparative adverb
- 13 **repulsī:** PPP governs preceding ablatives
hōc cōnātū: *from this...;* abl. of separation
- 14 **quā:** *where;* abl. place where
Sēquanīs invītīs: abl. absolute; add ‘being,’ without a pple for sum, just as in line 5; here 1 likely conditional in force: “if the Sequanians were unwilling’ Caesar suggests that the Gauls would be unwilling to let Helvetians pass
- 15 **Hīs:** i.e. Sequanians, dat. obj. of persuādere
suā sponte: *by their own will*
- 16 **ut...impetrāret:** *obtain (what is requested);* purpose
eō...dēprecātōre: *this one (being) an interceder,* abl. abs., supply pple for sum
- 17 **grātiā et largitiōne:** *because of...;* abl. of cause
plūrimum poterat: *was very powerful;* idiom
- 19 **cupiditate regnī adductus:** compare the same description of Orgetorix pg. 4, line 2
novīs rebus studēbat: *was eager for revolution;* ‘eager for new things’
- 20 **quam plūrimās:** *as many as possible*
suō beneficiō: *by his favor*
obstrictās: *bound;* i.e. by obligations
- 21 **ut...patiantur:** *that... allow;* noun result clause; pres. subjunctive patior
- 22 **obsidēsque...perficit:** normal word order: ‘perficit utī obsidēs inter sē dent;’ the utī clause is another noun result clause
perficit: *brings it about that*
inter sēsē: *to one another;* ‘among themselves’
- 23 **Sēquanī:** supply ‘give hostages,’ which is missing through ellipsis
nē...ut...: so that...so that...; negative and positive purpose clauses
itinere: *from...;* abl. of separation
- 23 **trānseant:** pres. subjunctive of transeō
Helvētīi: supply ‘give hostages,’ which is missing through ellipsis

10.1 Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in Provinciā. 2. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō Prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. 3. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum legātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum eīs quinque legiōnibus īre contendit. 4. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus eīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris Prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā Prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

11.1 Helvētīī iam per angustīās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. 2. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs defendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxiliū: 3. ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn debuerint.

abducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: to lead away, 1
Alpēs, -ium f.: Alps, 1
angustia, -ae f.: narrowness, straitness, 4
Aquileia, -ae f.: Aquileia (city on the Adriatic)
bellicōsus, -a, -um: warlike, 1
Caturīgēs, -um m.: Caturiges, 1
Ceutronēs, -um m.: Ceutrones (tribe) 1
circum: around, round about, 2
citerior, -ius: on the other side, hither, 3
complūres n.: several, 4
conscrībō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum: enlist, register, 2
conspēctus, -ūs, f.: look, sight, view, 3
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensus: ward off, repel, 4
dūcit
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3
expugnō (1): to capture by assault, assault, 1
extrā: outside; beyond, outside of (acc), 1
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 3
Graiocelī, -ōrum m.: Graioceli (Gallic Alpine tribe), 1
hibernus, -a, -um: of winter, wintry, 3
hiemo (1): spend the winter, pass the winter, 1
hūc: to this place, hither, here 1
inde: from there, then, afterward, 2

inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 2
Italia, -ae f.: Italy, 3
longus -a, -um: long, 4
meritus, -a, -um: deserved, due, just, 3
mūnitiō, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving, 3
Ocelum, -ī m.: Ocelum (Gallic town), 1
paene: almost, nearly, 3
pateō, -ēre, -uī: lie open, extend, 2
populor, -ārī, populātus sum: lay waste, devastate, 2
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī: set over, put in charge over, 3
quinque: five, 3
renūntiō, (1): bring back word, report, announce, 3
Santonēs, -um m.: Santones (Gallic tribe on coast) 2
Segusiāvī, -ōrum m.: Segusiavi (Gallic tribe), 1
septimus, -a, -um: seventh, 3
servitūs, servitūtis, f.: servitude, 3
T.: Titus, 2
Tolōsātēs, -ium m.: Tolosati (Gallic tribe in the Province), 1
ulterior, -ius: farther, 4
vastō (1): lay waste, 1
Vocontīi, -ōrum m.: Vocontii (tribe in Province), 1

- 1 **renūntiātur**: *it is reported...*; impersonal
Helvētīs esse in animō: *that the Helvetians have*; ‘to the Helvetians are’ dat. of possession in ind. disc., often translated with verb ‘have’
- 2 **Santonum**: gen. pl. modifying *fnēs*
longē: *far*; common translation for this adv.
- 3 **fieret**: translate in impf. impf. subj. *fiō, fierī*
Prōvinciae: *to the Province*; dat. of interest
futūrum (esse): *it...*; future inf., sum
- 4 **ut hominēs...habēret**: *that (the Province)...*
have; ‘that it have,’ noun result clause, the subject of *futūrum (esse)* above
- 5 **locīs...frūmentāriīs**: *to places...*; dat. object of special adjective *fīnitimōs*: Helvetians are a threat because they neighbor the food supply
- 6 **eī mūnitiōnī**: *this fortification*; dat. object of the compound verb *praefēcit*
- 7 **magnīs itinēribus**: *with long marches*
- 8 **quā**: *where*; abl. place where
- 9 **ulteriōrem Galliam**: *farther Gaul*
cum eīs: *with these...*; demonstrative pronoun
- 10 **locīs...occupātīs**: abl. abs.
superiōribus: *higher*; comparative adjective
itinere: abl. of place where
- 11 **Complūribus...pulsīs**: abl. abs.
- 12 **citeriōris...ulteriōris**: Nearer Province, just as Nearer Gaul, is Northern Italy on Rome’s side of the Alps while Farther Province or Farther Gaul is Southern France, on the farther side of the Alps
- 14 **in Segūsiāvōs**: *among...*
- 16 **suās cōpiās**: this word can mean ‘troops,’ but the larger context suggests that this group must include all of the Helvetians, translators may have to be satisfied with ‘supplies’
- 17 **eōrumque**: *and...their*; i.e. the Aeduan’s
- 18 **cum...possent**: *since...*; causal in sense, impf. subj. *possum*
suaque: *and their own (property)*; ‘their own things’ neuter pl. parallel to reflexive *sē*,
- 19 **rogātum**: *to ask...*; acc. supine of *rogō*, *rogāre* often expresses purpose; in English we can express purpose with an inf.
- 19 **sē...meritōs esse**: (*namely*) *that they...*; ind. disc. in pf. pass.; in apposition to auxiliary
omnī tempore: abl. time when; i-stem abl. obj.; translate tempore as ‘occasion’
- 20 **ita...ut...debuerint**: *so...that...*; result clause, translate pf. subj. *debeō* as a pf. indicative,
agrī (debuerint)....(et) liberī (debuerint)...
(et) oppida...debuerint: three subjects rely on the same verb missing through ellipsis; one must supply conjunctions missing through asyndeton

Popular Uses of Subjunctive in Caesar

Practical Note: identify and translate most subjunctives in the tense you find them.

	<u>How to identify</u>	<u>special translation</u>	<u>example</u>
1. Purpose, adverbial or relative	<i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	may/might	<i>ut Caesar mitteret</i> <i>so that Caesar might send</i>
2. Result, adverbial or noun clause	<i>ut/ut nōn</i> (neg.)	none	<i>ut Caesar mitteret</i> <i>that Caesar sent</i>
3. Cum-Clauses	<i>Cum</i> + subjunctive	none	<i>Cum Caesar mitteret</i> <i>When Caesar sent</i>
4. Indirect Question	interrogatives: e.g. <i>quis, cūr</i>	none	<i>nōvit quōs Caesar mitteret</i> <i>he learned whom Caesar sent</i>
5. Indirect Command	commanding verb + <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	none	<i>persuāsit ut Caesar mitteret</i> <i>he persuaded that Caesar sent</i>
6. Relative Clause of Characteristic	relatives: <i>quī, quod</i> + subj.	none	<i>eōs quōs Caesar mitteret</i> <i>those whom Caesar sent</i>
7. Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc.	any subordinate verb in an acc. + inf. construction	none	<i>eōs, sī id mitteret, lēgere</i> <i>that they read it, if he sent it</i>
8. Future-Less-Vivid	<i>sī</i> pres. subj., pres. subj.	should/would	<i>sī sit, mittat</i> <i>if he should be...he would send</i>
9. Pres. Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> impf. subj., impf. subj.	were/would	<i>sī esset, mitteret</i> <i>if he were...he would send</i>
10. Past Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> plpf. subj., plpf. subj.	had/would have	<i>sī fuisset, mīssisset</i> <i>if he had been...he would have</i>

11.4 Eōdem tempore Aeduī Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī Aeduōrum, 1
Caesarem certiorem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs
vim hostium prohibēre. 5. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs
possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant
sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. 6. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar 5
nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsumptīs,
in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

12.1 Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sequanōrum in
Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat
iudicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant. 2. Ubi 10
per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs
id flūmen tradūxisse, quārtam fere partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam
esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem
pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 3. Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs
aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit: reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt 15
atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. 4. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam
omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pagos divisa est.

5. Hic pagus ūnus, cum domō exīssset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L.
Cassium cōnsulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. 6. Ita
sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētia 20
insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea pīnceps poenās
persolvit. 7. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūblicās sed etiam pīvātās īniūriās
ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī
eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: to hide, put away, 2
adgredior, -ī, aggressus sum: attack, 2
Ambarri, -ōrum m.: Ambarri (tribe in N.W. Gaul), 2
avus, avī m.: grandfather, 1
Cassius, -ī m.: Cassius, 3
cāsus, -ūs m.: misfortune, mishap; fall 1
citrā: this side of (acc), 1
concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: cut down, kill, destroy, 1
cōsanguineus, -a, -um: related by blood, kindred, 2
consumō, -ere, -mptī, -mptum: take, use up, spend, 1
dēmōnstrō (1): to show, demonstrate, 1
dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātum sum: ravage, lay waste, 1
deus, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 2
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 4
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus: flow, 2
hūc: to this place, hither, here 1
immortalis, -e: immortal, 2
impediō, -ire: entangle, ensnare, hinder, hamper, 3

incrēdibilis, -e: unbelievable, 1
īnfluō, -ere, īnflūxī: to flow in, 3
īnopīnāns, īnopīnantis: unexpecting, unawares, 1
īsignis, -e: distinguished, conspicuous, 2
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: kill, slay, destroy, 4
iugum, -ī n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 4
iungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum: join, attach, 2
lēnitās, -tātis f.: gentleness, mildness, 1
linter, lintris f.: boat, skiff, 2
nōndum: not yet, 2
oculus, -ī, m.: eye, 2
pāgus, -ī m.: district, canton, 3
persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum: to pay in full, 1
poena, poenae, f.: punishment, penalty, 3
possessiō, -iōnis f.: possession, 3
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 3
pīvātus, -a, -um: personal, private, 2
prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: accomplish, produce, 1
quattuor: four, 4

ratis, ratis f.: raft, 2

Santonēs, -um m.: Santones (Gallic tribe on coast) 2

silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 2

socer, socerī m.: father-in-law, 1

solum, -ī b.: soil, ground, land, 1

Tigurīnī, -ōrum m.: Tigurini (people of Helvetia), 1

Tigurīnus, -ī m.: Tigurinus (district in Helvetia), 2

ulciscor, -ī, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 2

uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 4

vīcus, -ī m.: village, town, 4

1 **Aeduī Ambarri:** *the Aeduan Ambarri...*

2 **certiōrem faciunt:** *inform; 'make certain' a common double acc., certiōrem is an acc. pred. sēsē: that they...; acc. subj. of posse*

nōn facile...posse: *that (it is) not easy that... be able...; add esse to complete the impersonal construction with neut. sg. predicate facile*

4 **fugā:** *in flight*

sē...recipiunt: *retreat; 'take themselves back,' sē recipere is a common idiom for retreating*

5 **sibi...esse:** *that...; ind. disc., dat. of possession, 'to them...is,' can be translated as 'they have' solum: soil; obj. of praeter, modified by agrī nihil...reliquī: nothing remaining; partitive genitive with nihil*

Quibus rēbus: *by these state of affairs; 'by which...' English prefers the demonstrative in transitions*

6 **expectandum (esse) sibi:** *that he must not...; 'is going to be waited for by him;' ind. disc., a passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity, often with dat. of agent; in English translate in the active*

7 **in:** *among*

9 **incrēdibili lēnitāte:** *of...; abl. of quality in utram partem fluat: ind. question*

10 **possit:** *it is able; translate as impersonal ratibus...iunctis: abl. abs., PPP iungō*

13 **trānsibant:** *impf. trānsēō*

11 **certior factus est:** *see line 2 above trēs partēs: acc. object of trādūxisse, Helvētiōs: acc. subject of trādūxisse*

12 **Id flūmen:** *across...; second acc. obj. of the compound verb, trāndūxisse (et) quārtem...esse: that a fourth...was; ind. discouse; asyndeton, add a conjunction*

13 **dē tertiā vigiliā:** *during the 3rd watch; 'from the 3rd watch'*

profectus: *deponent PPP, proficīscor*

14 **trānsierat:** *plpf. trānsēō*

eōs impeditōs: *those burdened; i.e. with perhaps supplies, children, and the elderly*

15 **mandā(vē)runt:** *entrusted (acc.) to (dat.); syncopated form for 3rd pl. pf. mandō*

17 **Helvētia:** *Helvetian; modifies cīvitās*

18 **domō exisset:** *it had departed from home; abl. place from which; plpf. subjunctive exeō, patrum nostrōrum memoriā: within the memory of our fathers; vague abl. of time within; Cassius was defeated in 107 BC*

19 **sub iugum:** *under the yoke (of slavery); hence the English word 'subjugate'*

20 **sīve...sīve:** *whether...or*

quae pars...ea: *which part...this...; relative adjective, the antecedent is ea below*

21 **populō Rōmānō:** *upon...; dat. of compound verb*

intulerat: *plpf. inferō*

ea: *this (part); demonstrative, nom. subject*

prīnceps: *i.e. was the first to pay*

22 **quā in rē:** *in this matter; 'in which matter' nōn solum...sed etiam: not only...but also*

23 **ultus est:** *pf. deponent ulcīscor*

eius...avum: *the grandfather of his father-in-law Lucius Piso; eius, 'his,' refers to Caesar; L. Calpurnius Piso is the father of J. Caesar's wife, Calpurnia*

24 **eōdem proeliō:** *abl. place where*

quō Cassium (interfēcerant): *in which...; r relative cl.; abl. place where; supply main verb also as the missing verb in the relative clause*

13.1 Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, 1
 pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. 2. Helvētī
 repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē
 confēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs
 ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux 5
 Helvētiōrum fuerat. 3. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus
 cum Helvētīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi
 eōs Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; 4. sīn bellō persequī
 persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veterīs incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae
 virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 5. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī 10
 quī flūmen transissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut
 suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. 6. Sē ita ā patribus
 maioribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent aut
 insidiīs nīterentur. 7. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex
 calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut 15
 memoriā prōderet.

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 1
Cassiānus, -ī m.: of Cassius, 1
consequor, -ī, secūtus: follow after; pursue 3
cūrō (1): care for, attend to, manage, 1
dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: to look down upon, 1
discō, -ere, didicī, --: learn, learn how, 1
Dīvicō, -ōnis m.: Divico (Helvetian leader), 2
dolus, dolī m.: trick, deceit, 1
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, chieftain, 2
imprōvisō: unexpectedly, suddenly, 1
incommodum, ī n.: inconvenience, unpleasantness, 1
insidiae, -ārum, f.: ambush, plot, trap, 2
interneciō, -ciaonis f.: massacre, 1
lēgatio, -ōnis f.: embassy, envoy, 4

magis: more, rather, 4
magnōpere: greatly, very much, 1
nītor, nīfī, nīxus sum: to lean, support, strive, 1
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 4
pāgus, -ī m.: district, canton, 3
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum: follow up, pursue 2
perseverō (1): to persist, persevere, 1
pōns, pontis m.: a bridge, 3
prīstinus, -a, -um: former, previous, earlier 1
prōdō, ere, didī, ditum: bring forth; betray 1
reminiscor, -ī, --: to recall to mind, remember (gen) 1
repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 1
sīn: but if, if however, 1
tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: distribute, bestow, assign, 2

- 1 **Hōc...factō**: abl. abs.
reliquās...Helvētiōrum: object of deponent inf. cōsequī within the purpose clause
- 2 **pontem...faciendum (esse)**: *that...must be...*; ‘(is) going to be made,’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity, here an inf. in indirect disc.
- 3 **id quod**: *that which...*; id is obj. of fēcisse
diēbus xx: *within...*; abl. of time within
aegerrimē: *with the greatest difficulty*
- 4 **ut...trānsīrent**: (*namely*) *that they crossed the river*; noun result clause, in apposition to id
illum...fēcisse: *that that one...*; illum is acc. subj. and refers to Caesar, obj. of the aor. inf. of faciō is ‘id,’ at the beginning of the cum-clause
ūnō diē: *within...*; in contrast to diēbus xx
- 5 **cuius lēgatiōnis**: *of which embassy*; cuius is a relative adjective
bellō Cassiānō: *in*; abl. of time when, i.e. the war in which Cassius was consul, see I.12
- 6 **Is**: *this one*; i.e. Divico
ēgit: *discussed*; i.e. ‘engaged,’ pf. agō
sī...faceret...itūrōs (esse)...futūrōs (esse): *that if...would make,...would go...would be*; the beginning of a long ind. disc. after ēgit; this clause is a future-more-vivid condition (sī fut. ind., fut. ind.) in ind. discourse in secondary sequence: impf. subj. faciō, fut. inf. eō and sum
- 7 **ubi...constituisset...voluisset**: *where...*; plpf. subj. (translate as plpf. ind.)
- 8 **sīn...perservāret, reminiscerētur**: *or if he should..., let him remember both...*; + gen. obj., a mixed condition, reminiscerētur is a jussive subj. where the pres. subjunctive becomes impf. in secondary sequence
bellō persequī: abl. of means and deponent inf.
- 9 **incommodī**: a euphemism for ‘disaster’
- 10 **Quod**: *because*
adortus esset: plpf. deponent; translate as a plpf. indicative; verbs in subordinate clauses become subjunctive in ind. disc.
eī quī: *those who...*; eī is nom. sg. of is, ea, id
- 11 **suīs**: *to their own (people)*; dat. ind. object of ferre
ferre: complementary inf. ferō governed by possent, impf. subj. of possum
nē...tribueret...dēspiceret: *let him not either add...or look down upon*; negative jussive clauses (originally pres. subj.) become impf. subj. in secondary sequence
aut...aut: *either...or*
- 12 **suae virtūtī**: *to...*; dat. obj. of tribueret
ipsōs: i.e. the Helvetians
sē...didicisse: (*and*) *that they...*; sē is acc. subj. and refers to the Helvetians, the inf. is pf. inf. discō
- 13 **maioribus**: *ancestors*; ‘those greater (in age),’ a common meaning for comparative maiorēs
ita...ut...: *so...that they...*; result clause
magis...quam: (*they contend*) *more...than they contend...*; verb missing through ellipsis
- 14 **quārē**: *for which reason*; ‘by which matter,’ an abl. of cause; at the beginning of a question “Quā rē...?” means ‘why?’ or ‘for what reason?’
nē committeret ut...prōderet: *let him not arrange that this place where they had made a stand receive its name or pass on a memory from the calamity of the Roman people and slaughter of the army*; a negative jussive subj. (secondary seq.) introducing a noun result clause, Divico threatens a battle that will be as notorious as the battle of Cassius in 107 BC
cōstitissent: *they had made a stand*
- 15 **ex...exercitūs**: a single prepositional phrase

Gerundives

A gerundive, a future passive participle (stem + nd + 1st & 2nd decl. endings) agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Though it can be translated many ways: “going/about/worthy to be freed” or “to be freed,” we often employ a gerund-gerundive flip and translate it as a gerund:

Genitive	<u>suī liberandī</u>	<i>for freeing themselves</i>	
	<u>bellī inferendī</u>	<i>for the sake of waging war</i>	gen. + causā expresses purpose
Accusative	<u>ad nāvēs reficiendās</u>	<i>for repairing ships</i>	ad + gerundive expresses purpose
Ablative	<u>in petendā pāce</u>	<i>in seeking peace</i>	

Passive Periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity and governs a dative of agent. Translate it with “must” or “has to” or “ought” in the present and “had to” in the past.

<u>faciendum</u> esset	<i>it had to be done</i>	in subjunctive
sibi iter <u>faciendum</u> esse	<i>that a journey must be made by him</i>	in ind. discourse

14.1 Hīs Caesar ita respondit: eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dārī, quod eās rēs 1
 quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravior 2
 ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent: 2. quī sī alicuius iniūriāe
 sibi conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum, quod 5
 neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum 5
 putāret. 3. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī vellet, num etiam recentium
 iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per provinciam per vim temptāssent, quod
 Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriā dēpōnere
 posse? 4. Quod suā victōriā tam īsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē
 impūne iniuriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. 5. Cōnsuēsse enim 10
 deōs immortalēs, quō gravior hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs
 prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, eīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem
 impūnitātem concēdere.

6. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea quae 15
 polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque 15
 eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pacem esse
 factūrum. 7. Divico respondit: ita Helvētiōs ā maioribus suīs īstitutōs esse
 utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, consuerint: eius reī populum Rōmānum esse
 testem. Hōc responsō datō discessit.

admīror, -ārī, admīrātus: admire, wonder at, 1
Ambarrī, -ōrum m.: Ambarri (tribe in N.W. Gaul), 2
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautūrum: to beware, be on guard, 1
commemorō (1): to mention, relate, 1
commūtātiō, -tiōnis f.: change, 1
consciūs, -a, -um: conscious, witnessing, 1
contumēlia, -ae f.: insult, abuse, 1
decipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: catch, deceive, 1
dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: put down, 1
deus, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 2
difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 2
diūturnus, -a, -um: long-lasting, long, 1
Dīvicō, -ōnis m.: Divico (Helvetian leader), 2
doleō, -ēre, doluī: to grieve, suffer, 1
dubitātiō, -tiōnis f.: wavering, uncertainty, 1
enim: for, indeed, in truth, 3
glōrior, -ārī, gloriātus sum: to boast about, glorify, 1
immortalis, -e: immortal, 2

impūne: without penalty, unpunished, 1
impūnitās, -tātis f.: impunity, 1
īsolenter: unusually, insolently, 1
īstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3
interdum: sometimes, now and then, 2
invītus, -a, -um: unwilling, 3
meritus, -a, -um: deserved, due, just, 3
num: question expecting negative answer, 1
oblīviscor, -ī, -lītus sum: to forget, disregard, 1
recens, recentis adj.: new, fresh, recent, 2
satisfaciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: to do enough 2
scelus, sceleris n.: wickedness, crime, 1
secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 4
temptō (1): to attempt; attack; test, feel, probe, 2
tēstis, tēstis m.: witness, 2
ulciscor, -ī, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 2
vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectum: convey, carry, 2
victoria, -ae f.: victory, 3

- 1 **Hīs**: dat. indirect object
eō...quod: *for this reason... (namely) because*; ‘by this cause,’ abl. of cause, quod is in apposition
sibi: dat. ind. object of dārī
minus dubitātiōnis: less doubt; ‘less of doubt,’ partitive gen., minus is acc. subj. of pass. inf. dārī
- 2 **commemorā(vi)ssent**: syncopated 3rd pl. pf. subjunctive, subordinate verb in ind. disc.
memoriā tenēret: *remembered*; a common idiom, ‘held in memory,’ abl. of means
eō gravius ferre quō minus...accidissent: *that (Caesar) suffered more gravely the less deservedly the Roman people had died*;
eō...quō are correlatives (demonstrative and relative) expressing abl. degree of difference with comparative adverbs; meritō is an adv. formed from the PPP of mereō; and accidissent, plpf. subj. is a euphemism, perhaps, for dying
- 3 **quī sī...cavēre**: *if anyone had been aware of any injustice, it would not have been difficult for them to be on guard*; past contrary-to-fact condition in ind. disc.
- 4 **eō dēceptum (est), quod**: *for this reason they were deceived (namely) because*; by this cause,’ abl. of cause, quod is in apposition to eō; an impersonal passive may be translated actively
- 5 **commissum (esse) ā sē**: *that (any crime) had been committed by themselves*; ind. discourse with pf. pass. inf. governed by intellegeret
quārē timēret: *for which reason one might fear*
timendum (esse): *that they had to fear*; ‘(it) was going to be feared (by them)’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity; it is better translated in the active and in secondary sequence ‘had to’ typically replaced ‘must’
- 6 **quod sī**: *but if...*; ‘as to which, if’ or ‘in respect to which, if...’ an acc. of respect in transitions
vellet: *(Caesar) were willing...*; impf. subj. volō
- 6 **num**: *surely (he would) not (be willing to)...*; a question expecting a negative response; supply form of volō, posse is the complementary inf.
recentium iniūriarum: modifying memōriam
- 7 **quod...temptāssent**: *(namely) that...they had tried*; a clause of fact in apposition to iniūriarum
eō invītō: *him unwilling*; i.e. Caesar, abl. abs.
quod...quod...quod: *that...that...that...*; all three clauses of fact employ the verb vexāssent
- 9 **Quod...quodque**: *that...and that...*; both are acc. subj. of pertinēre
sē...tullisse: *that that they had carried (out)*; pf. inf. ferō in ind. disc.
- 10 **eōdem (modō) pertinēre**: *in the same (manner)* are pertinent
Cōnsuē(vi)sse: *it is customary that*; pf. inf. but pres. in sense
- 11 **quō...doleant**: *so that...*; ‘whereby,’ purpose clause in primary sequence because Caesar is expressing a general truth (‘quō’ is an alternative to ‘ut’)
gravius: comparative adverb
quōs...velint: *whom... (the gods) wish*;
hominēs is the antecedent
- 12 **eīs**: *to these*; i.e. the hominēs, dat. obj. of concēdere
secundiōrēs...rēs: *still greater riches*;
‘still second resources’ comparative adj.; i.e. the gods allow humans to prosper even more before punishing them for an old crime
- 14 **Cum ea it sint**: *Since these things are so*; i.e. ‘as a result’ causal-cum with pres. subj. sum
utī...intellegat: *so that...*; purpose, Caesar is subject.
ea...factūrōs (esse): *that the (Helvetians)...*; ind. disc.; the demonstrative ea, is a neuter pl. acc. obj. of the infinitive, acc. subj. is missing; factūrōs (esse) is the future inf. of faciō
- 15 **Aeduīs (satisfaciant)**: dat. of compound verb, supply verb from below
ipsīs: i.e. the Aeduans
- 16 **intulerint**: the Helvetians are subject; pf. subj. īferō
esse factūrum: factūrum esse; fut. inf., though singular the acc. subj. sēsē (Helvetians) is pl.
- 17 **maioribus**: *ancestors*; ‘greater ones (in age)’
- 18 **utī...consu(v)erint**: *so...that...*; a result clause with pf. subjunctive which is present in sense ‘have been accustomed’ = ‘are accustomed’
eius rē: gen. modifying testem
Hōc...datō: abl. absolute

15.1 Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque 1
 omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī provinciā et Aeduīs
 atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs
 hostēs iter faciant. 2. Quī, cupidius novissimum agmen insecutī, alienō locō
 cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. 5
 3. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvetii, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam
 multitudinē equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et
 novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. 4. Caesar suōs ā
 proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs
 pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. 5. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim 10
 iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn
 amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

16.1 Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī
 flāgitāre. 2. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante
 dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē 15
 pābulī quidem satis māgna copia suppetēbat: 3. eō autem frūmentō quod
 flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat proptereā utī minus poterat quod iter ab
 Arare Helvētiū āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nolēbat.

agmen, agminis n.: battle line, 5
alienus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 1
audāx, audācis: bold, daring, 2
āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 4
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrum: to fall, 1
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 4
cotīdiē: daily, every day, 2
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 4
flagitō (1): to demand, 1
frīgus, -oris n.: cold, 1
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 3
interdum: sometimes, now and then, 2
intersum, -esse, -fuī: take part in, be in, 1
laccessō, -ere, -ivī: provoke, goad, irritate, 3
mātūrus, -a, -um: early; ripe, mature, 4
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum: to move, arouse, 4
nāvis, nāvis, f.: ship, boat, 2
nōlō, nolle, nolūī: to refuse, be unwilling, 3
numquam: never, 3

pābulātiō, -tiōnis f.: foraging, scavaging, 1
pabulum, -ī n.: food, fodder, pasture, 1
ponō, ponere, posuī, positum: to put, place, 3
populātiō, -tiōnis f.: ravaging, 1
posterus, -a, -um: following, next, 1
praemittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2
praesentia, -ae f.: presence, 1
prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive off, drive back, 1
quattuor: four, 4
quīndecim: fifteen, 1
quīngentī, -ae, -a: five hundred, 2
quīnī, -ae, -a: five each, 1
rapīna, -ae, f.: pillage, rapine; prey, 1
senī, -ae, -a: six each, 1
septentriōnēs, -um m.: north, (7 stars), 4
subsistō, -ere, -stītī: to make a stand; oppose, 1
subvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum: to carry up, approach, 1
suppetō, -ere, -ivī, -itum: suffice, be at hand 2
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 4

- 1 **movent**: the shift to present tense makes the narrative more vivid
Idem: id-dem; neuter acc. sg. of *īdem, eadem, idem*
- 2 **ad numerum**: *near the number...*; ‘up to’ suggests an approximation such as ‘about’
omnī: 3rd decl. i-stem adj. (e→i)
- 3 **coāctum**: PPP *cōgō* (co + āgō), which means (1) gather, drive together or (2) force; here the first meaning is relevant
quī videant: relative clause of purpose, translate pres. subj. *videō* as ‘would see’ or ‘may see’
- 4 **quās in partēs...faciant**: in *quās partēs*, a relative adjective; *partēs* = ‘directions,’ and the verb is pres. subj. in an ind. question
Quī: (*those*) *who...*; missing antecedent is subject of *committunt*
cupidius: *too eagerly*; comparative adverbs can often suggest excess
novissimum agmen: *rear guard*; ‘most recent column,’ the superlative often means ‘last’
aliēnō locō: *in an unfavorable location*; abl. place where
- 5 **proelium committunt**: *begin battle*; idiom
- 6 **quō proeliō**: *by this battle*; abl of means, as often replace a relative with a demonstrative
sublātī: *elated*; ‘raised up’ not ‘destroyed’ as it is translated elsewhere; PPP for *tollō, tollere*
equitibus: abl. of means
- 7 **audācius**: comparative adv. of *audāx*
nōn numquam: *sometimes*; ‘not never,’ litotes
- 8 **novissimō agmine**: abl. means, see note l. 4
- 9 **continēbat**: *was holding back, was restraining*
satis habēbat *held it sufficient to...*; *habeō* has the meaning of ‘consider,’ here with a double accusative (*satis, prohibēre*) or ind. disc. with a missing inf. of *sum*: ‘that (it is) sufficient to...’
rapīnīs...populatiōibusque: *from...*; abl. of separation
- 10 **diēs...quīndecim**: *for...*; acc. duration of time
- 11 **utī...interesset**: *so that...*; result clause with impf. subj. *intersum*
nostrum primum: *primum* (agmen) *nostrum*;
- 12 **quīnīs...mīlibus**: *than...*; abl. of comparison, a ‘thousand of paces’ is one Roman mile
- 13 **Caesar...flāgitāre**: *Caesar kept demanding*; a historical inf., translate as an finite impf. verb
Aeduōs frumentum: *grain (from) the Aeduans*; *flāgitāre* governs a double acc.
essent pollicītī: plpf. subj. deponent, *polliceor*
- 13 **quod**: *because*
- 14 **sub**: *in the north*; the *septentrionēs* are a constellation of stars in the north, thus to dwell ‘under the *septentrionēs* is to dwell up north’
ut: *as*; + indicative
- 15 **nōn modo...sed**: *not only...but*
frumenta: *grain*; the neuter pl. is often used for standing, unharvested, grain
nē...quidem: *not even...*; these two adverbs often emphasize the intervening word
- 16 **satis**: a noun, acc. obj, *pabulī* is partitive gen.
eō...frumentō: abl. obj. of *utī*, inf. of *ūtōr*
propterea...quod: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
utī minus poterat: *Caesar is the subj. of this main verb, impf. possum, with a comparative adv. and a complementary inf. utōr (+ abl)*
- 17 **iter**: (*their*) *route*
- 18 **ā quibus**: *from...*; antecedent is *Helvētī*

Indirect Discourse: Accusative Subject + Infinitive

In secondary sequence, translate a present infinitive as imperfect, perfect as pluperfect, and “will” as “would.”

Present	Caesarem mīlitēs mittere <i>(says) that Caesar is sending soldiers</i> <i>(said) that Caesar was sending soldiers</i>	mīlitēs ā Caesar mittī <i>(says) that the soldiers are sent by Caesar</i> <i>(says) that the soldiers were sent by Caesar</i>
Perfect	Caesarem mīlitēs mīsisse <i>(says) that Caesar has sent* soldiers</i> <i>(said) that Caesar had sent soldiers</i>	mīlitēs ā Caesar missōs esse <i>(says) that the soldiers has been sent* by C.</i> <i>(said) that the soldiers had been sent by C.</i>
Future	Caesarem mīlitēs missūrum esse <i>(says) that Caesar will send soldiers</i> <i>(said) that Caesar would send soldiers</i>	*alternatives: <i>sent, were sent</i>

16.4 Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere. 5. Ubi sē 1
 diūtius dūcī intellexit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus metūrī
 oportēret, convōcātīs eōrum principibus quōrum magnam copiam in castrīs
 habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerant quem 5
 Vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītāe necisque in suōs
 habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt quod, 6. cum neque emī neque ex agrīs
 sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn
 sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum
 suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

17.1 Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat 10
 prōpōnit : esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat,
 quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. 2. Hōs sēditiōsā atque
 improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum conferant quod
 debeant: 3. praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possent,
 Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; 4. neque dubitāre [debeant] 15
 quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs
 libertātem sint ēreptūrī. 5. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs
 gerantur hostibus ēnuntiārī: hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. 6. Quīn etiam, quod
 necessariam rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum
 periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse. 20

accūsō (1): to accuse, blame, 2
adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, (dat.), 3
annuus, -a, -um: lasting a year, annual, yearly, 1
antea: before, earlier, formerly, previously, 3
auctōritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 4
coerceō, -ēre, coercuī, -itum: confine, strain, check, 1
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 1
convocō (1): to call together, 2
creō (1): to create, 1
dēmum: at length, finally, 3
destituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitutum: to set apart, forsake,
 betray, 1
dēterrēō, -ēre, -uī: frighten off, prevent, 2
emō, emere, emī, emptum: to take, buy, 1
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, reptus: rescue, take from, 4
hūc: to this place, hither, here 1
improbus, -a, -um: wicked, 1
instō, -āre, -stifī, set on, take position, press on, 2
libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2
Liscus, -ī m.: Liscus (Aeduan leader), 4
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 4

metior, metūrī, mēsum: to measure out, distribute, 1
nex, necis f.: murder, death, slaughter, 1
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: bear, betake, 2
plebs, plēbis, f.: common people, masses, 3
praesertim: especially, particularly, 2
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stītus: to perform; show, 2
precēs, -um: prayer, entreaty, 4
principātus, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 4
prīvātīm: privately, in private, 1
propinquus, -a, -um: near, neighboring, 3
prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: to set forth, 2
quantus, -a, -um: how great, much, many, 2
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 3
seditiōsus, -a, -um: seditious, treasonable, 1
sublevō (1): to lift up, raise up, support, assist 3
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, receive, 4
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: be silent, say nothing, 3
valeō, -ēre, uī: be strong, fare well, be able, 3
Vergobretus, -ī m.: Vergobretus, 1
vīta, -ae, f.: life, 2

- 1 **Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī:** *the Aeduans kept drawing out one day from the (next) day; i.e. they kept putting off the day the grain would arrive; a historical inf. (translate as impf.)*
cōnferri...adesse: *that...; assume missing acc. subj. frūmentum; ind. disc. following dīcere, the asyndeton highlights the Aeduans desire to change what they are saying to satisfy Caesar*
dīcere: *(the Aeduans) kept saying; another historical inf. (translate as iterative impf.)*
- 2 **dūcī:** *was being led along; i.e. deceived*
instāre: *was pressing; 'stood upon (us)'*
quō diē: *abl. time when*
metīrī: *i.e. to ration out individual portions to the soldiers*
- 3 **oportēret:** *it was customary; this impersonal verb (impf. subj.) is found 9 times in this book*
convōcātis...principibus: *abl. abs.*
- 4 **in hīs:** *among these; i.e. the principēs*
Diviciācō et Liscō: *in apposition of principibus*
summō magistrātuī: *over...; dat. of compound verb (see prae-)*
- 5 **appellant:** *call (x) (y); this verb governs a double acc.*
in suōs: *over ...; supply hominēs*
- 6 **quod...sublevētur:** *that he is being relieved; pres. subj. of alleged cause or charge*
- 7 **posset:** *supply frūmentum as subj. of this impf. subj. of possum; emī, sūmī are pres. pass. inf.*
tam necessariō...hostibus: *two abl. abs.*
eīs: *i.e. the Aeduans*
- 8 **cum...suscēperit:** *since...; causal cum-clause with pf. subj., Caesar is subject*
- 9 **multō...queritur:** *and...; asyndeton; add a conjunction 'et' before 'multō'*
multō: *much; 'by much' abl. of degree of difference modifying comparative gravius*
quod...dēstitūtus: *because...; subj. of alleged cause*
- 10 **quod...tacuerat:** *(that) which...; the missing antecedent is the obj. of prōpōnit*
- 11 **esse:** *that there are; ind. sc.*
nōn nullōs: *some, not a few; litotes*
- plūrimum valeat:** *is very strong; an adverbial acc. or inner acc. ('has very much strength'); plūrimum is often used with potest in this way*
- 12 **plūs possint:** *are more powerful; 'are more capable,' a comparative adv., pres. subj.*
quam: *than...; following a comparative*
- 12 **hōs...dēterrere:** *that these...; ind. disc., the hōs refers to the nōn nullōs above*
sēditiōsā...ōrātiōne: *abl. of means*
- 13 **nē...conferant:** *from bringing...; 'that they not bring,' nē + subj. commonly follows a verb of hindering, here dēterrere*
- 14 **praestrāre:** *that it was better...; ind. disc., the verb is impersonal*
- 15 **Gallōrum:** *supply the word 'imperia,' parallel to 'Rōmānōrum imperia'*
quam: *than*
- 16 **quīn:** *(but) that*
superāverint: *pf. subj. superō*
- 17 **sint ēreptūrī:** *would seize; periphrastic fut. (fut. pple + sum)*
Ab eisdem: *abl. of agent with ēnuntiārī*
nostra cōnsilia...ēnuntiārī: *ind. disc.*
quaeque: *and what things...; = et quae; neut. pl. relative pronoun*
- 18 **ā sē:** *by him; i.e. Liscus*
Quīn etiam: *nay even; adding an even greater point*
quod...ēnuntiā(ve)rit: *because he, (when) compelled, told the pressing matter to Caesar; syncopated pf. subj.*
- 19 **intellegere sēsē:** *that he realized; i.e. Liscus, main verb and acc. subj. in ind. disc.*
- 18 **quantō...cum periculō:** *cum quantō periculō, begins an ind. question with pf. subj. faciō*
- 19 **id:** *this; neuter subject, the antecedent is the clause quod...ēnuntiāvit*
- 20 **quam diū potuerit:** *for as long he was able; 'how long he was able,' a variation of quam + superlative + form of potest (as X as it is possible); here the verb is pf. subj. possum*
tacuisse: *supply sē (Liscus) as the acc subj.*

18.4 Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem Dīviciācī fratrem dēsīgnārī 1
sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter
concilium dīmīttit, Liscum retinet. 2. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū
dixerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit, 3. reperit esse vēra: ipsum esse 5
Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītatem
grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia
Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redempta habēre, propterea quod illō
licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. 4. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse
et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; 5. magnum numerum 10
equitātūs suō sumptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; 6. neque sōlum domī
sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā
matrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nobilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, 7.
ipsum ex Helvetiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex matre et propinquās suās
nuptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. 8. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter 15
eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod
eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum
locum grātie atque honōris sit restitūtus. 9. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs,
summam in spem per Helvētiōs regnī obtinendī venīre: imperiō populī
Rōmānī nōn modo dē regnō sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēsperāre. 20

affinitās, -tātis f.: affinity, relation through marriage, 1
alō, -ere, aluī, altum: to nourish, sustain, 1
antīquus, -a, -um: ancient, 2
audācia, -ae f.: boldness, audacity, 1
audāx, audācis: bold, daring, 2
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enlarge 1
Biturīgēs, -um m.: Biturges (tribe in central Gaul), 1
celeritās, celeritātis f.: speed, 1
circum: around, round about, 2
comparō (1): prepare, acquire, get ready, 4
complūres n.: several, 4
conventus, -ūs m.: meeting, assembly, 2
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 4
cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum: desire, long for, 1
dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus: diminish, lessen, 2
dēsīgnō (1): to mark out, designate, 1
dēsperō (1): to have no hope, give up, 4
dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus: send (away), 3
familiāris, -e: of the family; *subst.* close friend, 4
faveō, -ēre, fāvī: to favor, be propitious, 1
honor(s), -ōris m.: honor, glory; offering, 2
iacō (1): to throw, hurl, cast, 2
illīc: there, in that place, 1
largior, largīrī, -itum sum: give generously, bestow, 1
largiter: generously, 1

liberālītās, -tātis f.: courtesy; generosity, 2
liceor, licērī, licitum: to bid, make an offer, 2
Liscus, -ī m.: Liscus (Aeduan leader), 4
mater, matris f.: mother, 3
nōlō, nolle, nolū: to refuse, be unwilling, 3
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 4
nūbō, -ere, nupsī, nuptum: be married, marry, veil, 1
ōdī, -isse: to hate, 1
parvus, -a, -um: small, 1
plebs, plēbis, f.: common people, masses, 3
portōrium, -ī n.: tax, toll, levy, 1
potēns (potentis): powerful, influential, 2
potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 2
praesēns, -ntis: present, instant, 4
pretium, ī n.: price, value, 1
propinquus, -a, -um: near, neighboring, 3
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum: buy back; take back, 3
restitūō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: replace, restore, reestablish 4
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold back, keep, maintain 2
sēcrētō: secretly, 2 **semper:** always, ever, forever, 1
sentiō, -īre, -sī, sēnsus: to feel, realize, 2
soror, sorōris f.: sister, 2
sumptus, -ūs f.: expense, cost, 1
uxor, ūxōris f.: wife, spouse, 2
vectīgāl, -ālis n.: tax, tribute; revenue, 2
verus, -a, -um: true, real, 2

- 1 **Liscī**: *of Liscus*
dēsīgnārī: *was marked out*; Caesar thinks that Liscus was talking about Dumnorix without mentioning him by name
- 2 **plūribus praesentibus**: abl. abs.
iactārī: *to be thrown about (in conversation)*; iactō is a frequentative form of iaciō
- 2 **dīmittit, Liscum retinet**: asyndeton, a lack of conjunction makes Caesar's actions appear quick and decisive
- 3 **ex sōlō**: *from (him being) alone*
ea: *those things*; demonstrative, neuter acc. pl.
- 4 **liberius atque audācius**: comparative adverbs
- 5 **Eadem**: acc. obj. (neuter pl.)
ab aliīs: *away from the others*; i.e. alone
esse vēra: *that (these things)*; ind. disc., supply a neuter pl. subject
esse: *that it is...*
- 6 **summā audāciā**: *of...*; abl. of quality, describing Dumnorīgem
magnā...grātiā: *of great influence*; abl. quality
- 7 **rērum novārum**: *revolution*; 'new affairs' a term used to suggest a change of government
complūrēs annōs: *for...*; acc. duration of time
portōria...redempta habēre: *that (Dumnorix) had...bought*; habēre governs a double acc.: had (x) (y); redempta is the PPP of redīmō
complūrēs annōs: *for...*; acc. duration of time
- 8 **parvō pretiō**: *at a...*; abl. of price
propterea quod: *because*; 'for this reason because,' a pleonasm
illō licente: abl. abs., illō refers to Dumnorix, licente is pres. pple of liceor, not licet; during the collection of taxes, an individual or group bids to collect taxes, and the state collects from the highest bidder in advance; the winner pays the bid and afterward collects taxes in the hope of collecting extra as profit; without a rival Dumnorix allegedly bids low and therefore collects a low level of taxes from the people
- 9 **licērī**: *to bid*; deponent inf. liceor
hīs rēbus: *by these affairs*; abl. means
rem: *property*
auxisse: *that (Dumorix)...* ind. disc. pf. augeō
- 10 **ad largiendum**: *for giving generously*; ad + acc. expresses purpose, gerund of largior
- 11 **alere...habēre**: Dumnorīx remains subject in ind. disc.
neque solum...sed etiam: *not only...but also*
domī: *at home*; locative
- 12 **posse**: *(he) is powerful*
- 13 **matrem...collocā(vi)sse**: *he had placed his mother with*; i.e. given his mother in marriage
hominī: dat. of compound verb collocāvisse
- 15 **nuptum**: *to marry*; 'to veil,' a supine form (PPP + um) in the acc. expressing purpose
collocā(vi)sse: *he had placed*; as above, the verb suggests that he had given them in marriage
cupere Helvētiīs: *to favor the Helvetians*; 'long for the Helvetians,' dat. of special verb
- 16 **suō nōmine**: *by his own account*; an idiom found in business accounting
- 17 **eōrum adventū**: *by their arrival*
dēminūta (sit): pf. pass., supply 'sit'
- 18 **sit restitūtus**: restitūtus sit, pf. pass.
sī quid: *if anything...*; quī, quid are indefinite following sī, nisi, num and nē
- 18 **Rōmānis**: dat. of interest
- 19 **regnī obtinendī**: *of obtaining the kingship*; gen. + gerundive: perform a gerundive-gerund flip and translation as a gen. sg. gerund + obj., the gen. modifies spem
venīre: Dumnorix is still the subject
imperio: *under the command*; abl. of place where or time when
nōn modo...sed etiam: *not only...but also*
dē eā...grātiā: *from that influence*

Common Uses of the Dative

construction	example	translation
Dative of Indirect Object	eī filiam dat	gives his daughter to him
Dative of Compound Verbs	Druidibus praest	is over the Druids
Dative of Agent + Pass. Periphrastic	sibi iter faciendum esse	a journey must be made by him
Dative of Purpose	hibernis munitum	fortified for winter-quarters
Dative of Possession + sum	quae dominis sunt	which are to masters (= masters have)
Dative of Interest (Advantage)	nostris gravissimus	most grievous for our men
Dative of Reference	mihi videtur	it seems to me (i.e. from my viewpoint)
Dative of Special Adjectives	fugae similem	similar to flight
Double Dative (purpose + interest)	magnō usui nostris fuit	was for a great use to our men → served a great use to our men

18.10 Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre 1
adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā
Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātū quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī
mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum
perterritum. 5

19.1 Quibus rēbus cognītis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs
accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sequanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs
inter eōs dandōs curāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et civitātis
sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum
accusārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse 10
animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret. 2. Hīs omnibus rēbus
ūnum repugnābat quod Dīviciācī fratris summum in populum Rōmānum
stūdium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fīdem, iūstitiam,
temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciācī animum
offenderet verēbātur. 3. Itaque prius quam quicquam conārētur, Dīviciācum 15
ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium
Procillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam
omnium rērum fīdem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: 3. simul commonefacit
quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et
ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. 5. Petit atque hortātur, 20
ut sine eius offensiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuatur, vel
cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 4
accūsō (1): to accuse, blame, 2
adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 3
commone-faciō, -ere, -fēcī: to call to mind, remind, 1
cotīdiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 2
cūrō (1): care for, attend to, manage, 1
ēgregius, -a, -um: remarkable, outstanding, 2
equester, -ris, -e: equestrian, cavalry, 2
familiāris, -e: of the family; *subst.* close friend, 4
hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2
initium, -ī n.: beginning, entrance, 3
iniūssū: without orders, without authority, 1
īnsciēns, īnsciētis: not knowing, unaware, 1
interpres, interpretis m/f.: messenger, 1
iūstitia, -ae f.: justice, fairness, equity, 1
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 4

offendō, -ere, offendī, offēsum: offend, 1
offensiō, -siōnis f.: obstacle, setback; affront, 1
prius: before, 4
Procillus, -ī m.: Procillus, 3
quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything, 4
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 3
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 3
repugnō (1): fight against, oppose, resist, 1
sēparātīm: separately, 2
simul: at the same time (as); together, 1
studium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 2
supplicium, -iī n.: punishment, 3
suspiciō, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
temperantia, -ae f.: self-control, moderation, 1
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4
vōcō (1): call, name, address, summon, 2

- 1 **quaerendō**: gerund (-ing) of quaerō
 = **quod proelium...factum**: *as for the unsuccessful equestrian battle that occurred a few days before*; quod begins a noun clause: ‘as for the fact that...’ with plpf. pass. of faciō; paucīs diēbus is abl. of degree of difference: ‘later by a few days’
- 2 **factum (esse)**: *had been made*; ind. disc., pf. pass. inf. (supply esse); initium is acc. subj.
- 3 **equitātūī**: dat. obj. of compound praerat **auxiliō Caesarī**: as help for Caesar; a double dative (dat. of purpose, dat. of interest)
- 4 **eōrum fugā**: i.e. of Dumnorix and the Aeduans **reliquum equitātum**: acc. subj. of perterritum esse in ind. disc.
- 6 **Quibus rēbus cognītīs**: *these matters...*; abl. abs., translate the relative as a demonstrative **certissimae rēs**: *very reliable facts*
- 7 **accēderet**: *added*; suitable for this context **quod...quod...**: because...(and) because...; asyndeton, in apposition to rēs
- 8 **dandōs (esse)**: *that...had to be given*; ‘(were) going to be given,’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expressing obligation **curā(vi)sset**: syncopated plpf. subj. **ea omnia**: *all these things*; neuter. acc. pl. **nōn modo...sed etiam**: *not only...but also* **suō et civitātis**: both words are in parallel expressing possession; the former is an adj. in agreement, the later a noun in the gen. sg.
- 9 **inscientibus ipsīs**: *with (the Aeduans) themselves not knowing*; Caesar suggests that the Aeduans were unaware of Dumnorix’s actions regarding the Sequanians and Helvetia
- 10 **satis...arbitrābātur**: (*Caesar*) *thought...*; main verb after a length cum-clause **satis...causae**: *enough of a reason*; partitive gen., satis is an indeclinable noun here **quārē...iubēret**: *why either he himself should turn attention to him or he should bid the state (of the Aeduans) to turn its attention (to him)*; i.e. the arrest and punish him, quā rē, ‘because of what reason’ is abl. of cause introducing a relative clause of characteristic, which typically governs a subjunctive
- 11 **His omnibus rēbus**: *because of...*; abl. of cause
- 12 **ūnum...quod**: *one thing...(namely) that...*; ūnum is neuter subject of repugnābat
- 10 **Dīviciācī fratris**: *of his brother Diviacus*; modifies stūdiū, voluntātem, fidem, iūstitiam, and temperantiam; Diviācus was Dumnorix’s brother, and Caesar uses this connection to explain why he resisted action against Dumnorix **in populum Rōmānum**: *among the Roman people*
- 14 **nē...offenderet**: *lest...*; fearing clause governed by the impf. deponent vereor **eius supplicio**: eius refers to Dumnorix
- 15 **prius quam**: *before...*; ‘earlier than,’ often used as one word; comparative adv. **quicquam**: *anything*; neut. acc. obj.
- 17 **cui**: *for whom*
- 18 **cum eō**: *with him*; ‘with this one’ -Diviciacus **simul...et**: *at the same time...and*;
- 19 **quae**: (*the things*) *which...*; missing antecedent is the obj. of commonefacit, relative clause of characteristic with dicta sint, pf. pass. subj. - **ipso praesente**: abl. abs., ipsō is Diviciacus
- 20-**quae**: (*the things*) *which...*; missing antecedent is the obj. of ostendit, a relative clause of characteristic with dixerit, pf. subjunctive **dē eō**: *about him*; i.e. about Dumnorix **apud sē**: *in the presence of him*; i.e. Caesar
- 21 **ut...statuat...iubeat**: *that...*; ind. command **eius...animī**: *without (any) offence to his feelings*; animī is an objective gen. (offend his feelings) **vel...vel**: *either...or*
- 21 **statuat...statuere**: *decide...to decide*; ‘take a stand,’ i.e. make a legal decision against Dumnorix and punish him **Causā cōgnitā**: abl. abs.

20.1 Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit 1
 nē quid gravius in fratrem statueret: 2. scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam
 ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum
 domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per
 sē crēvisset; 3. quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiā sed 5
 paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre fraternō et
 existimātiōne vulgī commōvērī. 4. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius
 accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiāe apud eum tenēret, nēminem
 existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae
 animī ā sē āverterentur. 10

5. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram
 prendit; consōlātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse
 ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniuriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac
 precibus condōnet. 6. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eō
 reprehendat ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; 15
 monet ut in relīquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō
 fratrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum
 loquātur scīre possit.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: admit, apply, 2
adulescentia, -ae f.: youth, 1
amor, -ōris m.: love, desire, passion, 1
āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 4
complector, -plectī, complexus sum: embrace, 1
condōnō (1): to give, deliver up; give over, pardon, 2
consolor, -ārī, -ātus sum: to console, comfort, 1
crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: to grow, increase, 1
cūstōs, cūstōdis m/f.: guard, watchman, 2
dexter, -tera, -terum: right, the right hand, 3
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, anger, passion, 3
existimātiō, -iōnis f.: judgment, opinion, 1
flēō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum: weep, lament, bewail, 4
fraternus, -a, -um: of a brother, brotherly, 2
lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 2
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 4
minimus, -a, -um: very little, 2
minuō, -ere, minuī: diminish, ebb, 1
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: to warn, advise, 1
nec: and not, nor (nec, nec = neither, nor) 2

nervus, -ī m.: sinew, muscle, 1
obsecrō (1): beseech, implore, entreat, 1
ops, opis f.: wealth; resources, influence, 1
ōrō (1): plead, pray (for), entreat, 1
paene: almost, nearly, 3
perniciēs, -ēī f.: destruction, disaster, 2
ponō, ponere, posuī, positum: to put, place, 3
praetereō, -ire, -i(v)ī, itum: to pass over, disregard, 1
precēs, -um: prayer, entreaty, 4
prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsūm: to take hold of, grab 1
prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: to set forth, 2
quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything, 4
reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm: to seize; blame, 1
sciō, -ire, -īvī (ī), -ītus: know (how), 4
suspiciō, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
verbum, -ī n.: word, speech, 2
verus, -a, -um: true, real, 2
vītō (1): avoid, evade, shun, 2
vōcō (1): call, name, address, summon, 2
vulgus, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 3

- 1 **complexus**: PPP deponent, complector; likely embracing his knees
- 2 **nē quid...statueret**: *that...not anything...*; neg. ind. command following obsecrāre; quid is indefinite after sī, nisi, num, and nē
in: *against*
scīre sē: *that he...*; sē is acc. subj. of inf. of sciō
illa esse vēra: *that...*; illa is neuter pl. acc. subj.
- 3 **plūs...dolōris**: this comparative serves as the obj. of capere and a partitive gen.
quam: *than...*; following a comparative adj.
propterea quod: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
ipse: refers to Diviciacus
grātiā plūrimum (posset): *was very powerful in influence*; plūrimum potest ‘was very much capable’ is a common idiom for power, supply posset from below; grātiā is an abl. of respect
- 4 **domī**: *at home*; locative
ille: *that one*; i.e. Dumnorix
minimum posset: *was least powerful*; ‘was least capable,’ in contrast to plūrimum
per sē: *by himself*
- 5 **crēvisset**: the subject is ille; plpf. subj. crescō
quibus opibus et nervīs: *which power and strength*; metonymy (sinew indicates strength); abl. object of impf. ūtor; Diviciacus is subject
nōn solum...sed: *not only...but*
ad minuendam grātiām: *for...*; ad + acc. expresses purpose; employ a gerundive-gerund flip and translate this gerundive (adj) + noun as a gerund (-ing) and object
- 6 **sēsē...commōvērī**: *that he...*; ind. disc. acc. subj. sēsē refers to Diviciacus
- 7 **sī quid gravius**: *if anything more severe had happened*; quid is indefinite after sī, nisi, num, and nē (see l. 2); protasis of what in direct disc. is a future-more-vivid condition (sī fut. pf., fut)
eī: dat. of interest, refers to Dumnorix
ā Caesare: at the hands of Caesar; abl. of source, ‘from Caesar,’ or abl. of agent, ‘by Caesar’
- 8 **cum ipse**: *since he himself...*; i.e. Diviciacus, cum-clause is causal in sense
- locum**: *position*; modified by amīcitiā
nēminem...existimātūrum (esse): apodosis of what is future-more-vivid condition in direct disc.; nēminem is acc. subj. (nominative nēmō), the verb is a fut. inf., supply esse
- 9 **nōn...factum (esse)**: *that (it) was done...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf., supply esse and a subject
quā ex rē: ex quā rē, relative adjective
futūrum (esse) utī...: *it will be that...*; a noun result clause following a fut. inf., supply esse
- 11 **ā Caesare**: *from Caesar*; abl. Of source
- 12 **(ut) finem...faciat**: *that...*; an ind. command governed by rogat, often introduced by ut
ōrandī: gen. sg. gerund (verbal noun), ōrō
tantī...esse: *that...is of such great value*; Or ‘it is worthwhile’ described generally as a gen. of quality, tantī is specifically a gen. of value in the predicative position
- 13 **utī...condonet**: *that he forgives*; ‘he pardons’ result clause, the subject is Caesar
eius: *his*; i.e. Diviciacus
voluntātī et precibus: abl. of means, voluntātī is an 3rd decl. i-stem ablative
- 14 **quae**: *(the things) which...*; the missing neuter pl. antecedent is the obj. of ostendit; a relative clause of characteristic (+ subj.), an alternative explanation in ll. 14-15
- 15 **quae...quae**: *(the things) which...(the things) which...*; successive relative clauses of characteristic (+ subj.) governed by prōponit
- 16 **ut...vītet**: *that he...*; ind. command, Dumnorix is subject of pres. subj. vītet
in reliquum tempus: *in the future*; ‘for the remaining time’
praeterita: *the past*; ‘things having gone past,’ past pple of praetereō, obj. of condōnāre
sē...condōnāre: *forgives*; ‘pardons,’ ind. disc.
Diviciācō fratrī: *for...*; dat. of interest
- 17 **Dumnorigi**: *for...*; dat. of interest
pōnit: *appoints*; i.e. Caesar sets guards over
ut...possit: *so that...*; purpose, pres. possum
quae agat, quibuscum loquātur: two ind. questions governed by scīre

volō, velle, voluī: to wish: Regular 3rd Conj. except Infinitive, Present Indicative and Present Subjunctive

	pres.	impf.	fut.	perf.	plupf.	fut. pf.	present indicative	present subjunctive	imperfect subjunctive
	vult	volēbat	volet	voluit	volerat	volerit	volō	velim	vellem
	<i>she wishes</i>	<i>she was wishing</i>	<i>she will wish</i>	<i>she wished</i>	<i>she had wished</i>	<i>she will have wished</i>	volumus	velimus	vellēmus
							vīs	velīs	vellēs
							vultis ¹	velītis	vellētis
							volunt ²	velit ³	vellent ⁵
								velint ⁴	

¹p. 14, 46 ²p. 28 ³p.52 ⁴p. 28, 42, 58, 60 ⁵p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62

21.1 Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte 1
 cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et
 quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cognōscerent mīsīt. 2. Renūntiātum est facilem
 esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetore, cum duābus
 legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis 5
 ascendere iubet; quid suī consilī sit, ostendit. 3. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem
 itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē
 mittit. 4. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū
 L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22.1 Prīmā luce, cum summus mōns ā [Luciō] Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab 10
 hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut
 posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsiūs adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, 2.
 Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō
 occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īsignibus
 cognōvisse. 15

3. Caesar suās copiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit.
 Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi
 ipsiūs cōpiāe prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in
 hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque
 abstinēbat. 4. Multō denique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem 20
 ā suis tenērī, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum
 quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. 5. Eō diē quō consuerat intervāllō
 hostēs sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: to keep or hold back, 1
accurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum: to run to, occur, 1
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 11
ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 1
ascensus, -ūs m.: ascent, climb, 1
captīvus, -a, -um: prisoner, captive, 2
circuitus, -ūs m.: circuit, circle, 2
collis, -is m.: hill, high ground, 3
comperīō, -īre, -perī, -pertum: find out, 3
consideō, -ēre, -sēdī: to sit down, settle, 5
Considius, -iī m.: Considius, 3
Crassus, -ī m.: Crassus, 2
denique: lastly, finally, 2
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, chieftain, 2
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, 3
īsignis, -e: distinguished, conspicuous, 2
intervallum, -ī n.: interval, distance, 3
iugum, -ī n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 4
longus -a, -um: long, 4
Lūcius, -ī m.: Lucius, 1

lūx, lūcis, f.: light, 1
militāris, -e: military, of a soldier, 2
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum: to move, arouse, 4
nātūra, -ae. f.: nature, 3
octo: eight, 1
P.: Publius, 2
perītus, -a, -um: experienced, skilled, 1
ponō, ponere, posuī, positum: to put, place, 3
posteā: thereafter, afterwards, 4
praecipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: receive in , 1
praemittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2
praetor, praetoris m.: praetor, 1
prope: near; nearly, 1
qualis, -e: which sort, of what sort?, 1
quīngentī, -ae, -a: five hundred, 2
renuntīō, (1): bring back word, report, announce, 3
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: draw up., 2
Sulla, -ae f.: Sulla, 1
T.: Titus, 2
undīque: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 3

- 1 **certior factus**: *having been informed*; ‘having been made more certain,’ PPP
hostēs...octō: *that...*; ind. disc. with certior factus; hostēs is an acc. subject
- 2 **mīlia passuum**: *miles*; ‘thousands of paces;’ acc. of extent of space
ipsīus: gen. sg. of ipse, refers to Caesar
quālis...montis: *what was...*; ind. question with impf. subj. of sum
- 3 **quālis...ascēsus**: *what (was)...*; ind. question, supply esset, both governed by cognōscerent
quī cognōscerent mīsīt: *Caesar sent (spies) who might learn...*; relative clause of purpose
facilem esse: *that...*; add ascēsum as acc. subj.
- 4 **dē tertiā vigiliā**: *during...*
- 5 **eīs ducibus**: *those as guides*; predicative
- 6 **dē quārtā vigiliā**: *during...*
eōdem itinere: *on the same route*; place where
- 7 **quō**: *on which*; abl. place where; with plpf. eō
- 8 **rei militāris**: *in military affairs*; gen. object of perītissimus
habebātur: *was held (to be)*; ‘was considered’ the passive of habeō is often a linking verb
- 10 **Prīmā luce**: *at...*; time when
summus mōns: *top of the mountain*
- 11 **nōn longius**: *no farther*; comparative adverb
mille et quīngentis passibus: *than...*; abl. of comparison with longius, equiv. to 1.5 miles
ut...comperit: *as he discovered...*; ut + indicative frequently means ‘as’ or ‘when’
- 12 **aut ipsius...aut Labiēni**: *either of Caesar himself or of Labienus*; gen. with adventus
- neque...cognitus esset**: plpf. pass. subj. cognōscō in the cum-clause from line 10
- 13 **equō admissō**: *with horse at full speed*; ‘with horse having been sent (or let go);’ abl. abs., the riders let the reins go slack and the horses run as fast as they can without restraint
- 14 **voluerit**: (*Caesar*) *wished*; perf. subj. volō, verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. discourse are often placed in subjunctive
id sē...cognōvisse: *that he knew this...*; id is the acc. obj. and sē (i.e. Considius) the subject of the pf. inf. cognōscō, all governed by dicit
- 17 **ut erat praeceptum**: *as it had been ordered*; impersonal plpf. pass., eī is dat. sg. is, ea, id
nē...mitteret: *not to begin...*; ind. command; proelium committere is an idiom
nisi ipsius cōpiae...: *unless his own troops...*
- 18 **ut...fieret**: *in order that...might*; purpose clause with impf. subj. fiō
- 20 **monte occupātō**: abl. abs.
nostrōs: supply virōs or militēs
- 20 **proeliō**: *from...*; abl. of separation
multō...diē: *late in the day*; abl. time when
- 21 **ā suīs**: supply virīs or militibus, abl. of agent
- 22 **quod nōn vidisset prō vīsō renūntiā(vi)sse**: *reported (that) which he had not seen as seen*; i.e. ‘in place of (the thing) having been seen’
Eō diē: abl. time when, eō is demonstrative
Quō consu(ē)erat intervāllō: *within an distance within which...*; intervāllō is the antecedent of the relative clause quō consuerat
- 23 **mīlia...tria**: see line 2 above

Common Uses of the Ablative

construction	example	translation
Ablative Absolute	urbe captā	<i>the city having been captured</i>
Ablative of Means	stilō scrībēns	<i>writing with a stylus</i>
Ablative of Agent	ā matre vocātur	<i>he is called by his mother</i>
Ablative of Separation (includes From Which)	timore liberātur	<i>she is free from fear</i>
Ablative of Manner	cum diligentīā	<i>with diligence</i>
Ablative of Accompaniment	cum amīcīs	<i>with friends</i>
Ablative of Place Where	in urbibus	<i>in the cities</i>
Ablative of Place From Which	ab marī	<i>from the sea</i>
Ablative of Time When	eō tempore	<i>at that time</i>
Ablative of Respect (Specification)	linguā differunt	<i>differ in respect to language</i>
Ablative of Quality (Description)	est animō bonō	<i>is of good will</i>
Ablative of Cause	gaudiō commōtus	<i>moved by joy</i>
Ablative of Comparison	clārior luce	<i>brighter than light</i>
Ablative of Degree of Difference	multō clārior	<i>much brighter</i>
w/ verbs: potior, utor, fungor, fruor, vescor	utī gladiō	<i>to employ a sword</i>
w/ adjectives: dignus, indignus	glōriā indignus	<i>unworthy of glory</i>

23.1 Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī 1
frūmentum mētīrī oporteret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē
maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, reī
frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit: iter ab Helvetiīs avertit ac Bibracte
īre contendit. 5

2. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus
nuntiātur. 3. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē
exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn
commīsissent, sīve eō quod rē frūmentariā intercludī posse cōnfīderent,
commutātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā nōvissimō agmine 10
īnsequī ac laccessere coepērunt.

24.1 Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem
subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. 2. Ipse interim
in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānōrum [ita
utī suprā]; 3. sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quas in Galliā citeriōre 15
proximē conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collōcārī, ac tōtum montem
hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in unum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab
eīs quī in superiōre aciē constiterant mūnīrī iussit. 4. Helvētiī cum omnibus
suīs carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt; ipsī
cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam 20
nostram aciem successērunt.

advertō, -ere, advertī, adversum: turn to, 1
Aemilius, -iī m.: Aemilius, 1
āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 4
Bibracte, -is m.: Bibracte (head town of Aeduans), 2
bīduum, -ī n.: a period of two days, 2
citerior, -ius: on the other side, hither, 3
collis, -is m.: hill, high ground, 3
commūtō (1): to change, 2
compleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 1
confertus, a, um: crowded together, dense, 1
confidō, -ere: trust, believe, rely upon, 3
conscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum: enlist, register, 2
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 4
copiōsus, -a, -um: abundant, well-supplied, 1
dēcuriō, -ōnis m.: decurion (officer of 10 horse unit), 1
fugitīvus, -a, -um: fugitive, 1
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 3
intercludō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum: close off, 2
interdum: sometimes, now and then, 2
iugum, -ī n.: yoke, (mountain) range, 4

laccessō, -ere, -īvī: provoke, goad, irritate, 3
longē: far, at a distant, 4
magis: more, rather, 4
medius -a -um: in the middle of, 2
metior, metūrī, mēsum: to measure out, distribute, 1
phalanx, phalangis f.: phalanx, formation, 3
postquam: after, when, 2
postrīdiē: the day after, the next day, 3
prīdiē: on the day before, the previous day, 2
prōspiciō: look forward, survey, look, 1
quattuor: four, 4
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: cast off or back, 3
sarcinae, -ārum f.: baggage, a soldier's pack, 2
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: draw up, 2
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go up, approach, 2
suprā: above, over, on the top, 3
sustineō, -ere, -uī: hold up, sustain, 4
triplex (triplicis): three-fold, triple, 3
veterānus, -a, -um: veteran, old, 1

- 1 **postrīdiē eius diē:** *on the next day*; eius diē is superfluous: ‘on the next day of this day’ abl. time when
supererat: *was remaining*; impf. supersum
exercitū: *for...*; dat. of interest
- 2 **metīrī:** i.e. to ration out individual portions to the soldiers
oportēret: *it was customary*; this impersonal verb (impf. subj.) is found 9 times in this book
oppidō...: in apposition to Bibracte
longē: *by far, far*; common translation
- 3 **mīlibus...xviii:** *than...*; abl. of comparison, ‘a thousand of paces’ is one mile
reī frumentāriae: *for the grain supply*; dat. with compound verb
- 4 **prōspiciendum (esse):** *he had to provide*; ‘it is going to be provided (by him),’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum), supply esse
Bibracte: *to Bibracte*; as often, towns and cities express place to which without ‘ad’
- 6 **Ea rēs:** *this matter*; i.e. the lack of grain
fugitīvōs: i.e. through Gauls serving in the Roman army that defected to the Helvetians
- 7 **seu ...sive:** *whether...or*
quod...exīstimārent: *because...*; impf. subj. for alleged cause, translate as impf. indicative
Rōmānōs: acc. subject of discēdere in ind. disc.
- 8 **eō magis quod:** *all the more because...*; ‘more than this because,’ abl of comparison with a comparative adverb
proelium commīsissent: *had begun battle*; idiom, plpf. subj. for alleged cause
- 9 **eō quod:** *for this reason, (namely) because*; ‘by this cause,’ abl. of cause, quod is in apposition
rē frumentāriā: *from the grain supply*; abl. of separation with pass. inf. intercludī
cōfident: impf. subj. of alleged cause
- 10 **commutātō...conversō:** two abl. absolutes
nostrōs: supply virōs or militēs
nōvissimō: *rear*; ‘most recent’ in a military column is the last or rear column
- 12 **advertit:** *turned (acc) to (acc)*; id is acc. obj. of a compound verb (more usually a dative)
- 13 **quī sustinēret:** *to sustain...*; ‘who would sustain...’ relative clause of purpose
- 14 **in colle mediō:** *halfway up the hill*; ‘on the middle of the hill’
ita utī suprā: *just as above*
- 15 **iugō:** *ridge*
in Galliā citeriōre: *on this side of Gaul*; ‘nearer Gaul,’ i.e. northern Italy
- 14 **proximē:** *recently*; ‘very closely,’ superlative adverb is temporal
- 15 **omnia auxilia:** *all auxiliary (forces)*
- 17 **eum:** *it*; i.e. the place (locum)
- 18 **in superiōre aciē:** *in the upper battle line*; i.e. higher on the hill and farther from the battle
- 19 **secutī:** deponent PPP, sequor
contulērunt: pf. conferō
ipsī: *the men themselves*
- 20 **cōnfertissimā aciē:** first of 3 successive abl. absolutes, supply ‘being’ as the pple
sub...successērunt: *approached up to...*; ‘went up (from under),’ sub as a prefix often means ‘up (from under);’ in this case the Helvetians are in fact moving uphill

25.1 Caesar, primum suō deinde omnium ex conspectū remōtis equīs, ut 1
aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, 2. cohortātus suōs proelium
commisit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre pīlis missis, facile hostium phalangem
perfregērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictis, in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

3. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis 5
ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque
ēvellere neque, sinistrā impeditā, satis commode pugnāre poterant; 4. multū ut
diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scutum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore
pugnāre. 5. Tandem vulneribus defessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns
suberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. 10

6. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum
milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et nōvissimis praesidiō erant,
ex itinere nostrōs latere apertō aggressī circumvērere, et id conspicātī
Helvētī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus īnstāre et proelium
redintegrāre coepērunt. 7. Rōmāni conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma 15
et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac summōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs
sustinēret.

adgredior, -ī, aggressus sum: attack, 2
aequō (1): (make) equal, make level, 1
aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 2
bipertītō: in two parts, 1
Boiī, -ōrum m.: Boians (Bohemians) 4
brachium, -ī n.: arm, 1
circumveniō, -ire: to come around, encircle, 3
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum: to close, shut, 1
cohors, cohortis f.: cohort, company, troop 2
colligō (1): to bid together, tie together, 1
conspectus, -ūs, f.: look, sight, view, 3
conspicor, -ārī, -ātum: catch sight of, perceive, 1
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 4
corpus, corporis, n.: body, 2
dēfessus, -a, -um: wearied, exhausted, worn out, 1
deinde: then, next, from that place, 4
dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum: draw (a sword), 1
disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: scatter, throw away, 1
ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum: send away 1
ēvellō, -ere, ēvelli, ēvulsus: to pull out
ferrum, -ī n.: iron; sword; tool, 1
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 3
iactō (1): to throw, hurl, cast, 2
ictus, -ūs m.: strike, blow, 1
impediō, -ire: entangle, ensnare, hinder, hamper, 3

inflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexus: to bend (on), 1
instō, -āre, -stitī, set on, take position, press on, 2
latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 1
nūdus, -a, -um: naked, bare, 1
perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum: to break up, shatter 1
phalanx, phalangis f.: phalanx, formation, 3
pīlum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 4
praeoptō (1): to prefer, wish first, 1
pugna, -ae f.: battle, fight, 3
redintegrō (1): make whole again, renew, 1
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 3
resistō, -ere, -stitī: stand still, halt; oppose (dat) 2
rursus: again, backward, back, 1
scūtum, -ī m.: shield, 3
secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 4
sinister, -tra, -trum: left (hand), 2
subsum, -esse, -fuī: be near, close at hand, 1
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go up, approach, 2
summoveō -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: move up, drive back 1
sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, 4
tandem: finally, at last, at length, 2
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 4
transfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum: pierce, transfix, 1
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 4
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

- 1 **primum suō, deinde omnium**: *first his own then all (the officers')*...; possessive modifying equīs, within an abl. absolute; the possessive adj. suō modifies equīs in the sg. (equō), while omnium is gen. of possession
ut...tolleret: *in order to destroy...*; tollō may mean 'to lift up' or, as here, 'to destroy'
- 2 **fugae**: *for...*; objective gen. modifies spem
suōs: supply virōs or militēs
- 3 **commisit**: *began*; an idiom with proelium
superiore: *higher*; comparative adj.
facile: irregular adverb from facilis, facile
- 4 **Eā...dēscriptis**: successive abl. absolutes along with asyndeton adds to the excitement of the narrative; eā, 'this,' refers to the fem. sg. phalangem
in: *against...*; a common translation in battle narratives
- 5 **ad**: *for...*; expressing purpose
magnō...erat impedimentō: *it was of great hindrance*; impedimentō is abl. of an quality; Gallīs is a dat. of interest
- 6 **unō ictū**: *with the single strike*; single shields in a phalanx are overlapping, a spear can pierce two shields and render them useless
ferrum: subject, i.e. the iron of the spearpoint
- 7 **multī ut...**: *so that many...*; a purpose clause, the multī is positioned before 'ut' for emphasis
- 8 **diū iactātō brachiō**: abl. abs., although brachiō sg. in form, it applies to the individual arms of many Helvetians: Caesar suggests that many Helvetian was shaking their arms holding shields to dislodge spears
nūdō corpore: i.e. lacking the protection of a shield
- 9 **et...et**: *both...and*
pedem referre: *to carry back their step*; i.e. to withdraw,
- 8 **eō**: *(to) there*; adverbial"
- 10 **sē recipere**: *to retreat*; an idiom
- 11 **captō monte**: *the mountain reached*; abl. abs., not 'seized' as capiō is typically translated
succēdentibus nostris: *our (men)...*; abl. abs. with pres. pple, supply virīs
hominum milibus circiter xv: abl. of means, hominum is partitive gen. with milibus
- 12 **agmen claudēbant**: *closed out the battleline*; i.e. were located in the rear of the Helvetian battleline
nōvissimīs praesidiō erant: a double dative (dat. of interest, dat. of purpose) which in a raw translation 'were as protection for the rear guard' but often rendered 'serve as protection for the rear guard'; nōvissimīs, 'most recent (men)' refers to the last soldiers in the battle column
- 13 **ex itinere**: *from the route*
latere apertō: on...; i.e. the exposed flank of Caesar's forces, abl. place where
aggressī: deponent PPP
circumvērē: circumvērērun, a syncopated pf. form
conspicātī: PPP deponent governs id, which refers to the progress of the Boii and Tulingi
- 14 **sēsē recēperant**: see sē recipere in line 10
- 15 **conversa signa intulērunt**: *carried their reversed standards (upon the enemy)*; i.e. fighting on two fronts, the Romans had to turn their military standards, which always face the enemy, and turn them toward the new enemy
prīma et secunda aciēs...tertia: both nom. subjects, supply signa intulērunt which is missing through ellipsis
- 16 **victīs ac summōtis**: *(those)...*; supply a noun for these two PPPs; dative of compound verb

26.1 Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritē pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre 1
 nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem
 recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. 2. Nam hōc
 tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum
 hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. 3. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta 5
 pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant, et ē locō superiōre
 in nostrōs venientēs tēla coiciēbant, et nōn nullī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās
 ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. 4. Diū cum esset pugnātum,
 impedimentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetōrīgis filia atque ūnus ē
 filiīs captus est. 10

5. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā
 nocte continenter īerunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs
 Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter
 sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. 6.
 Caesar ad Lingonās litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē 15
 iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse
 trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

acriter: sharply, fiercely, 3

alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1

anceps, ancipitis: two-headed, on two fronts, 1

āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 4

continenter: continuously, incessantly, 2

fīlia, -iae f.: daughter, 4

filius, -iī m.: son; child, 3

hōra, -ae f.: hour, 1

iuvō (1): to help, aid, 2

Lingonēs, -um m.: Lingones (Gallic tribe), 3

littera, -ae f.: letter (of the alphabet); literature, 2

matarā, -ae f.: Gallic spear, javelin, 1

moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 2

nēvē: or not, and not, nor, 3

nuntius, -iī m.: messenger, message, 2

obicīō, -ere, obiēcī, obiectum: cast, hurl, throw (into) 2

occīdō, -ere, occidī, occisus: kill, cut down 4

potior, -iī, -itus: gain possession of, possess (*abl.*), 4

rota, -ae f.: wheel, 1

septimus, -a, -um: seventh, 3

sepultūra, -ae f.: burial, 1

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw under, place under 1

supersum, -esse, -fuī: be over; be left over, survive, 1

sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, 4

trāgula, -ae f.: tragula (a Gallic javelin) 1

trīduum, -ī n.: a period of three days, 4

vallum, -ī n.: wall, fortification, palisade, 1

vesper, vesperī m.: evening, 2

vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 2

vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

- 1 **pugnātum est**: *they fought*; ‘it was fought (by them),’ an impersonal verb that can may translate in the active in English
diūtius: *longer*; comparative adverb of diū
- 2 **nostrōrum**: supply virōrum
alterī...alterī: *one...the other*; nom. pl. because there are two groups of men
- 3 **sē...recēpērunt**: *retreated*, idiom
ut: *as...*; ut + indicative
sē contulērunt: *carried themselves*; i.e. preceded
hōc tōtō proeliō: *within...*; abl. time within
- 4 **cum...**: a concessive cum-clause; see line 1 for a translation of the pf. pass. subj. pugnātum sit
aversum: *turned (in flight)*; from āvertō
- 5 **ad multam noctem**: *(up) to late in the night*
propterea quod: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
- 7 **in nostrōs**: *against our (men)*; supply virōs
nōn nullī: *some, not a few*; lit. ‘not none’
- 8 **esset pugnātum**: *they had fought*; impersonal plpf. passive subj., see line 1
- 9 **potītī sunt**: pf. deponent potior governs an abl. object; nostrī (virī) is the subject
hominum: partitive gen. of mīlia nom. subject
- 11 **eāque tōtā nocte**: *during this entire night*; ‘within...,’ abl. time when or within
- 12 **nullam partem noctis**: *during...*; acc. duration of time with itinere intermissō
itinere intermissō: abl. abs.
- 13 **et...et**: *both...and*
- 14 **nostrī**: *our (men)*; subject of potuissent
sequi: deponent inf., complement to potuissent
potuissent: plpf. subj. possum in a cum-clause
- 15 **nē...nēve**: *that they not...or*; -ve, ‘or’ is an enclitic (compare -que); nē introduces either neg. purpose or, more likely, ind. commands
eōs frumentō: add iuvārent
aliā rē: *some other matter*; means or abl. of respect, ‘in respect to any other matter’
- 16 **quī sī iūvissent, sē...habitūrum (esse)**: *if these had helped, he (Caesar) would hold...*; this condition would be a future-more-vivid in direct speech (sī fut. pf., fut.); in ind. disc. fut. apodosis becomes a fut. inf. and the fut. pf. protasis becomes a plpf. subjunctive; Latin may use quī, ‘who,’ in transitions but English prefers the demonstrative ‘these’
eōdem locō quō: *in the same position in which (he held the Helvetians)*; verb missing through ellipsis
- 17 **trīduō intermissō**: *with three days having intervened*; ‘three days sent inbetween’

27.1 Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē deditiōne ad eum 1
mīsērunt. 2. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent
suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pacem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum
essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, paruērunt. 3. Eō postquam
Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. 5

4. Dum ea conquīruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum
mīlia sex eius pagī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs
trādītīs suppliciō adficerentur, sīve spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā
multitudine dediticiōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omninō ignorārī
posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvetiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum 10
finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28.1 Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant hīs utī conquīrerent et
reducerent, sī sibi purgātī esse vellent, imperāvit: 2. reductōs in hostium
numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trādītīs in
dēditiōnem accēpit. 3. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovīcōs in finēs suōs, unde 15
erant profectī, revertī iussit, et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil
erat quō fāmē tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut hīs frumentī cōpiam
facerent: ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: affect, afflict, 3
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 2
conquīrō, -ere, -sivī, -quīsītum: to seek, 2
dēdīticius, -a, -um: surrendered; *subst.* captives, 2
dēditiō, -ōnis f.: surrender, capitulation, 2
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus: go out, disembark, 2
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
famēs, -is f.: hunger, 1
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum: weep, lament, bewail, 4
frūx, frugīs f.: fruit; fruit of the earth, produce, 1
ignōrō (1): not know, be unacquainted, 1
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 2
indūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum: to lead in, bring in, 2
inopia, -ae f.: poverty, want (of), need, 1
Latovīcī, -ōrum m.: Latovicians, 3
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 4
occultō (1): hide, conceal, 1
pāgus, -ī m.: district, canton, 3
pareō, -ēre, paruī: to obey, submit, 1

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee, take refuge, 2
poscō, -ere, popōscī: ask, demand, 2
postquam: after, when, 2
prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: accomplish, produce, 1
proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw forward, project, 2
purgō (1): to cleanse, make clean, 1
resciscō, -īre, -īvī (īī), -ītus: to learn, discover, 1
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: replace, restore, reestablish 4
servus, -ī, m.: slave, 1
sex: six, 3
suppliciter: as a suppliant, 1
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, 3
tolerō (1): endure, sustain, bear, support, 1
trādō, -dere, -didī, -dītum: to give over, hand down, 4
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 4
unde: whence, from which, 2
Verbigenī, -ōrum m.: Verbigeni (district of the
Helvetians), 1
vīcus, -ī m.: village, town, 4

- 1 **omnium rērum**: *of all resources*; modifies inopiā
- 2 **Quī cum**: *when theses...*; ‘who when,’ again, English prefers demonstratives in transitions
ad pedēs: *at (Caesar’s) feet*
- 3 **locūtī flentēs**: deponent PPP and pres. pple, the conjunction is missing (asyndeton)
quō...essent: *in which*; abl. place where; impf. subj. sum; subordinative verbs become subjunctive in ind. disc.
ad pedēs: *at (Caesar’s) feet*
- 4 **iussisset**: change of subject to 3rd sg. (Caesar); plpf. subj. iubeō
Eō: *(to) there*; adverb
- 5 **obsidēs, arma, servōs**: asyndeton, add ‘et’
- 6 **ea**: demonstrative, neuter plural subject
hominum: partitive gen. modifying mīlia
- 7 **sive...sive**: either...or
nē...adficerentur: *lest...*; clause of fearing
armīs trādītīs: abl. absolute
- 8 **supplicio**: abl. of means
- 9 **suam fugam...posse**: that...; fugam is acc. subject
- 10 **primā nocte**: abl. of time when
- ēgressī**: PPP deponent ēgredior
- 12 **Quod**: *this*; object of rescit
quōrum...ierant: the antecedent of this relative clause is hīs, the dat. ind. obj. of imperāvit
utī...reducerent: that...; ind. question with impf. subj. governed by imperāvit (here hīs)
- 13 **sibi**: *in his eyes*; to him, dat. of reference
purgātī esse: *to be acquitted*; ‘to be cleansed (of offence),’ the PPP is a predicate noun
vellent: impf. subj. volō
- 14 **obsidibus...trādītīs**: abl. abs.
- 16 **erant profectī**: profectī erant; plpf. deponen proficīscor
revertī: pass. inf.
omnibus...āmissīs: abl. abs.
domī: *at home*; locative
- 17 **quō...tolerārent**: *whereby...might...*; purpose clause introduced with ‘quō’ instead of ‘ut’
imperāvit: as above, governs a dat. object and ind. command
hīs: *for...*; dat. of interest
- 18 **ipsōs**: *(the Helvetians) themselves*

28.4. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi 1
 discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī quī trāns
 Rhēnum incolunt ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs transīrent et fīnitimī
 Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. 5. Boiōs, petentibus Aeduīs, quod 5
 ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus
 illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem
 atque ipsī erant recepērunt.

29.1 In castrīs Helvetiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litterīs Graecīs confectae
 et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nominātīm ratiō confecta erat, quī
 numerus domō exīssēt eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm 10
 puerī, senēs mulierēsque. 2. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum
 Helvētiōrum mīlia cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlia xxxvi, Latovīcōrum xim,
 Rauricōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii : ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia
 nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii. 3. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt 15
 cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et
 decem.

Boii, -ōrum m.: Boians (Bohemians) 4
bonitās, -tātis f.: goodness; fertility (of land), 1
caput, capitis, n.: head; leader; beginning; life, 2
cēnsus, -ūs f.: census, registration, 1
condiciō, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 3
decem: ten, 3
ēgregius, -a, -um: remarkable, outstanding, 2
Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 1
Latovīcī, -ōrum m.: Latovicians, 3
libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2
littera, -ae f.: letter (of the alphabet); literature, 2
mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 2
nōlō, nolle, nolū: to refuse, be unwilling, 3

nōminātīm: by name, 1
nōnaginta: ninety, 1
pār, parīs: equal, similar, even, 4
postea: thereafter, afterwards, 4
puer, puerī m.: boy, 1
Raurācī, -ōrum: Rauraci, 2????????????????
redeō, -ire, -ivī: go back, return, 1
senex, senis m.: old man, 1
sēparātīm: separately, 2
tabula, tabulae f.: tablet, 2
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 4
unde: whence, from which, 2
vacō (1): be empty, ve vacant, 1

- 1 **eā...ratiōne...quod**: *with this calculation... (namely) because*; abl. of cause
- 2 **eum locum...vacāre**: *that this place...*; ind. disc., eum is a demonstrative adjective
unde...discesserant: relative clause
nē...transirent...essent: *lest...*; fearing clause
 calculation for," objective genitive
- 3 **transirent**: impf. subj. transeō
- 4 **Galliae...Allobrogibus**: dat. obj. of the special adjective finitimī, the predicate of essent
petentibus Aeduīs: *the Aeduans seeking*; abl. abs. + ind. command below
- 5 **ēgregiā virtūte**: *because of...*; abl. of cause
erant cognitī: cognitī erant; plpf. pass. cognōscō
ut...collocarent: *that...*; ind. command governed by petentibus Aeduīs above
quibus illi: quibus is dat. ind. obj. and refers to the Boiī, illi is subj. and refers to the Aeduans
- 6 **parem condiciōnem**: *equal condition*; i.e. equal rights
- 7 **atque ipsī erant**: *as they were*; 'atque' with the adj. parem means 'as:' parem atque = 'equal as' compare simul ac/atque (the same time as)
recepērunt: *received, welcomed*
- 9 **quibus in tabulis**: in quibus tabulis; relative adjective
quī numerus...(et) quī...: *what number... (and) who*; introducing ind. questions
- 10 **domō**: abl. place from which
ferre: irregular inf. ferō
possent: impf. pass. possum
- 11 **Quārum omnium rērum**: *Of all these affairs*
capitum: *lives*; 'heads,' partitive genitive modifying mīlia cclxiii
- 13 **possent**: impf. pass. possum, relative clause of characteristic
ad: *nearly*; 'up to,' an approximation
- 15 **Eōrum**: *among these*; partitive gen.
- 16 **cēnsū habitō**: abl. abs.
ut: *as*; ut + indicative

Gerunds

A gerund (present stem + nd + 2nd decl. neut. sg. endings) is a verbal noun. It can govern an acc. obj. and is easy to distinguish from a gerundive because a gerund has only -ī/-ō/-um endings and does not modify a nearby noun.

Nominative	Navigāre est difficile. <i>To sail is difficult.</i>
Genitive	facultās <u>navigandī</u> <i>opportunity for sailing</i> <u>navigandī</u> causā <i>for the sake of sailing</i>
Dative	ūtilis <u>navigandō</u> <i>useful for sailing</i>
Accusative	ad <u>navigandum</u> <i>for sailing (to sail)</i>
Ablative	<u>navigandō</u> <i>by sailing</i> in <u>navigandō</u> <i>in sailing</i>

Gen.	navigandī	<i>of sailing</i>
Dat.	navigandō	<i>for sailing</i>
Acc.	navigandum	<i>sailing</i>
Abl.	navigandō	<i>by sailing</i>

an infinitive not gerund as subject

gen. + causā/grātiā expresses purpose
 dative of purpose
 ad + gerund expresses purpose
 ablative with or without a preposition

ulciscendī Rōmānōs *of avenging the Romans* occasionally with an acc. object

30.1 Bellō Helvētiōrum confectō, tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs 1
 civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 2. intellegere sēsē, tametsi
 prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniuriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō
 repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī
 Rōmānī accidisse; 3. propterea quod eō cōnsiliō florentissimīs rēbus domōs 5
 suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque
 potīrentur, locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent quem ex omnī
 Galliā opportūnisimum ac fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs
 stipendiāriās habērent.

4. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque 10
 Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī
 consensū ab eō petere vellent. 5. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōstituērunt
 et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnuntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum
 esset, inter sē sanxērunt.

31.1 Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem principēs civitātum quī ante fuerant ad 15
 Caesarem revertērunt, petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā
 omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. 2. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs
 flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs proiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrare
 nē ea quae dīxissent ēnuntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent;
 propterea quod, sī ēnuntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs 20
 vidērent.

commūnis, -e: common, 4
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consensus, 1
cruciātus, -ūs m.: torture, 3
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus: send (away), 3
domicilium, -iī n.: dwelling, 2
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 4
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum: weep, lament, bewail, 4
flōrēns, -entis: flowering, flourishing, 1
fructuōsus, -a, -um: fruitful, productive, 1
grātulor, -ārī, grātulātus sum: to congratulate, 1
indīcō -ere -dīxī -dictum: declare, disclose, indicate, 1
iūrandus, a, -um: to be sworn (iūs iūrdanum: oath), 4
labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive, 2
occultō (1): hide, conceal; subst. secret, 3
opportūnus, -a, -um: fit, suitable, useful, 1

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: to allow, permit; let
 through, 2
poena, poenae, f.: punishment, penalty, 3
potior, -irī, -itus: gain possession, win (*abl.*), 4
proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw forward, project, 2
quīdam, quae-, quod-: certain one, someone, -thing 1
repetō, -ere, -ivī, -pētum: seek again, seek back, 2
sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctum: make sacred, sanctify,
 ratify, 1
sēcrētō: secretly, 2
stipendiārius, -a, -um: tributary, pay, 2
tametsi: even if, although, though, 1
terra, -ae, f.: earth, ground, land, 2
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice; advantage, 6

- 1 **tōtūus**: gen. sg., tōtus, a pronomial adjective
- 2 **grātulātum**: *to show favor*; a supine form (PPP + um) in the acc. expressing purpose
sēsē: *that they...*; ind. disc. with intellegere
- 3 **Helvētiōrum...Rōmānī**: *injustices of the Helvetians toward the Roman people*; both are gen., subjective and objective gen. respectively: ‘the Helvetians’ injustice for the Roman people’
ab hīs: i.e. the Helvetians
- 4 **repetī(vi)ssēt**: plpf. subj. both because it is a concessive clause governing subjunctive and subordinate clauses in ind. disc. govern a subj.
eam rem...accidisse: ind. disc. governed by sēsē intellegere above
quam: *than*; here after minus, comparative adv.
- 5 **propterea quod**: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
eō cōnsiliō...utī: *with this plan...(namely) that*; an abl. of cause, utī introduces a purpose clause in apposition to eō cōnsiliō
- 6 **florentissimīs rēbus**: *in...times*; or “in...circumstances” equiv. to abl. time when
suās: modifies the feminine irreg. noun domōs
utī...inferrent...dēligerent...habērent: *so that...might...*; extended purpose clause. impf.
tōtī Galliae: dat. of compound verb, pronomial tōtus takes -ius in gen. sg. and -ī in dat. sg. pf. dep. inf. proficīscor, governed by arbitrārī
- 5 **potirentur**: impf. subj. deponent potior in the purpose clause, governs an abl.
domiciliō: *for...*; dat. of purpose
quem...iūdicā(vi)ssēt: relative clause of characteristic governs a subj., here plpf.
- 10 **utī sibi...liceret**: *that...*; indirect command licet is impersonal and often governs a dat. of interest
in diem certam: *on an appointed day*
voluntāte: *with permission*; ‘by the will...’
- 11 **sēsē habere**: *(they said that) they have...*; add a main verb to govern ind. disc.
- quās...vellēt**: impf. subj. volō (irreg. inf. velle) in a relative clause of characteristic
- 12 **Eā rē permissā**: abl. absolute
conciliō: *for...*; dat. of purpose
- 13 **iure-iurandō**: *by a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive iurō, -āre
nē...ēnuntiāret: neg. ind. command
quis; *anyone*; aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquis becomes just quis)
nisi...mandātum esset: *except (those) to whom...*; plpf. becomes subj. in a subordinate clause in the ind. command above
- 15 **īdem**: *the same*; eīdem, modifies principēs
- 16 **utī...liceret**: ind. command, see also line 10
dē: *about...*
- 17 **agere**: *to discuss*; as often with dē, ‘about’
- 18 **Caesarī**: *(before) Caesar*; dat. of compound
- 19 **nē...ēnuntiārentur**: *so that...*; neg. purpose clause; compare to line 13 above
ea: *those things*; neut. pl. demonstrative
quae dīxissent: plpf. subj., relative clause of characteristic often follows vague pronouns
quam utī: *than that.*; the subject and object of comparison are both purpose clauses
vellēt: impf. subjunctive of volō (inf. velle) in a relative clause of characteristic
- 20 **sī ēnuntiātum esset,...vidērent**: *if it had been...they would...*; a mixed contrary-to-fact condition;
summum: modifies cruciātum
sē ventūrōs (esse): fut. inf. in ind. disc.

31.3 Locutus est pro his Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiōnes esse 1
 duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. 4. Hi cum
 tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab
 Arvernīs Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. 5. Horum primo
 circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias 5
 Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures : nunc esse in
 Gallia ad centum et viginti milium numerum. 6. Cum his Aeduos eorumque
 clientis semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos
 accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse.
 7. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi 10
 Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos
 esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iure iurando civitatem
 obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano
 imploratorios neque recusatorios quominus perpetuo sub illorum ditione
 atque imperio essent. 8. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum qui adduci 15
 non potuerit ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. 9. Ob eam rem se ex
 civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod
 solus neque iure iurando neque obsidibus teneretur.

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: fall in love, covet, 1
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 2
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum: summon, send for, 1
centum: one hundred, 2
cliens, -entis m.: client, dependent, 2
diciō, diciōnis f.: sway, power, sovereignty, 2
factiō, -ōnis f.: faction, party, 1
ferus, -a, -um: wild, savage, fierce, 3
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus: break, 1
hospitium, -ī n.: hospitality; guest-host tie, 2
implōrō (1): implore, beseech, beg, 3
iūrandus, a, -um: to be sworn (iūs iūrdanum: oath), 4
iūrō (1): to swear, take an oath, 1
liberī, -ōrum m.: children, 2
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 4

mercēs, mercēdis f.: pay, wages, 1
nōbilitās, -tātis f.: nobility, renown, 2
nunc: now, at present, 2
obstringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum: to confine, bind, 1
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 3
posteaquam: after (+ indicative), 2
potentātus, -ūs m.: political power, 1
principātus, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 4
profugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum: to flee, escape, 2
recūsō (1): to object to, refuse, reject, 3
repetō, -ere, -īvī, -petitum: seek again, seek back, 2
Roma, -ae f.: Rome, 1
semel: once, 2
tantopere: with such great effort, so earnestly, 1
vīgintī: twenty, 1

- 1 **Locutus est**: pf. deponent loquor, introducing an ind. discourse
prō hīs: i.e. the Gauls
Galliae tōtius: *of all of Gaul*; partitive gen.; tōtius is a gen. sg. of a pronomial adj. tōtus
esse: (*there are*); ind. disc. governed by locutus sum
- 2 **hārum**: i.e. of the factiōnēs, partitive gen.
alteriūs: gen. sg. of the pronomial adj. alter
alteriūs Arvernōs: supply ‘principātum tenēre’ missing through ellipsis, another ind. discourse governed by locutus sum above
- 3 **Hī cum...contenderent**: *when these...*; cum-clause within the ind. discourse
factum esse: *it happened that*; ‘it had been done’ ind. disc. governed by locutus sum
ūti...arcesserentur: *that...*; noun result clause
- 4 **Hōrum**: i.e. of the Germans; paritive gen.
- 5 **trānsisse**: trāns(iv)isse; pf. inf. trānseō
adamāscent: adamā(vi)ssent; plpf. subj.
- 6 **trāductōs (esse) plūrēs**: ind. disc., plūrēs is acc. subj. and trāductōs (esse) is pf. pass. inf.
esse: (*there*) is
- 7 **ad...numerum**: *near the number...*; ‘up to’ suggests an approximation such as ‘about’
cum hīs: *with these*
Aeduōs...amīsisse: lengthy ind. disc. with locutus sum in 31.3
- 10 **quibus proeliīs**: *by these battles...*; a relative is used for transitions where we prefer a demonstrative pronoun in English
fractōs: (*those*) broken...; supply a missing acc. subj. for coactōs esse
plūrimum...potuissent: *would have had very much power*; common idiom in Caesar, plpf. subj. possum
- 11 **coactōs esse**: *were forced*; cōgō can mean (1) to gather or, as here, (2) to compel; pf. pass.
- 12 **Sequānīs**: dat. indirect object
- iure-iurandō**: *by a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive iurō, -āre
- 12 **sēsē...repetitūrōs (esse)...imploratūrōs**
- 13 **(esse)...recūsātūrōs (esse)**: (*namely*) *that they (themselves)...would...*; ind. disc. with fut. infinitives clarify the oath in line 12
- 14 **quominus...esset**: *from being...*; ‘by which the less ...they might be...’; quominus or quominus (neut. abl. relative + comparative adv.) is used after verbs of preventing and begins a noun clause of ind. command;
perpetuō...imperio: *under the perpetual sway and command of those*
- 15 **Ūnum sē esse**: *that he was one...*; i.e. that Diviciacus was; reflexive acc. subj. refers to Diviciacus in line 31.3, the ind. discourse is covered by locūtus sum
quī...potuerit: who has not been able; pf. subj. (not fut. pf. indicative); in a relative clause of characteristic
addūcī: *to be influenced*; pres. passive inf.
- 16 **ut iurāret...daret**: *to swear...or to give*; ‘that he swear...or give’ ind. command, impf. subj. in secondary sequence
Ob eam rem: *on account of this matter*
sē...prōfūgisse: *that he...*; i.e. Diviciacus, ind. disc.
- 17 **Rōmam**: *to Rome*; locative; towns and cities do not employ ‘ad’ for place to which
auxilium postulātum: *to request...*; supine (PPP + um) in the accusative expresses purpose, which in English is often expressed with an infinitive
- 17 **quod**: *because*; subordinate clauses in ind. disc. govern a subjunctive, here an impf. subj.
- 18 **solus**: (*he*) alone
iure-iurandō: *by a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive iurō, -āre

31.10 Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea 1
quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque
partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc
de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis
mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum xxiiii ad eum venissent, quibus 5
locus ac sedes pararentur. 11. Futurum esse paucis annis uti omnes ex Galliae
finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim
conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro neque hanc
consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. 12. Ariovistum autem, ut semel
Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, 10
superbē et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere,
et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad
voluntatem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium:
13. non posse eius imperia diutius sustinere. 14. Nisi quid in Caesare
populoque Romano sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod 15
Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas a
Germanis petant fortunamque quaecumque accidat experiantur. 15. Haec si
enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare quin de omnibus obsidibus qui apud
eum sint gravissimum supplicium sumat. 16. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua
atque exercitūs vel recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani deterrere 20
posse ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque
omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria posse defendere.

Admagetobrīga, -ae f.: Admagetobriga, 1
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1
auctoritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 4
comparō (1): prepare, acquire, get ready, 4
cruciātus, -ūs m.: torture, 3
crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 1
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, withdraw, die, 2
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensus: ward off, repel, 4
dēterreō, -ēre, -uī: frighten off, prevent, 2
domicilium, -iī n.: dwelling, 2
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: to put forth, give out, 1
ēmigrō (1): to move out, 1
enim: for, indeed, in truth, 3
exemplum, -ī n.: example, 2
experior, -irī, expertus sum: to experience, try, 2
Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, 3
Harūdēs, -um: Harudes (Germanic tribe), 3
irācundus, -a, -um: full of anger or passion,
passionate, 1
liberī, -ōrum m.: children, 2
mensis, -is m.: month, 3

nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 4
nunc: now, at present, 2
nūtus, -ūs m.: a nod, 1
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 3
peior, peius: worse, 1
poscō, -ere, popōscī: ask, demand, 2
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 3
recens, recentis adj.: new, fresh, recent, 2
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 3
rēx, rēgis m.: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 4
sēdēs, -is f.: seat, 3
semel: once, 2
superbus, -a, -um: proud, arrogant, bold, 1
supplicium, -iī n.: punishment, 3
sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, 4
temerārius, -a, -um: rash, inconsiderate, 1
victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 3
victoria, -ae f.: victory, 3
victus, -ūs m.: living, way of living; food, 1

- 1 **peius...accidisse**: *a worse event...happened*; neut. comparative employed as a substantive and acc. subj.
Sequānīs...Aeduīs: *for...for*; dat. of interest
quam: *than*
propterea quod: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
- 2 **eōrum**: i.e. the Sequanians
consēdisset, occupāvisset, iubēret: subj. in a subordinate clause in ind. discourse
- 3 **esset**: relative clause of characteristic governs a subj., impf. sum
- 4 **paucīs mensibus ante**: *a few months before*; ‘before by a few months,’ abl. of degree of difference
- 5 **quibus**: *for whom*; dat. of interest
- 6 **futūrum esse...utī...pellerentur...trānsirent**: *will have been driven...will have crossed*; ‘it will be that...were driven...crossed,’ this is a periphrastic form of the future pass. in ind. disc. (futūrum esse + noun result clause)
paucīs annīs: *within...*; abl. of time within
- 8 **conferendum esse Gallicum (agrū)**: *Gallic (land) must not be compared*; ‘is going to be compared,’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity, here an inf. in indirect disc.
- 9 **victūs**: *of living, of way of life*
comparandum (esse): *must not be compared*; see line 8, consuētūdinem is the acc. subject.
ut...vicerit: *when he conquered...*; ut + pf. ind. made subjunctive as a subordinate clause in ind. disc.
- 10 **quod proelium factum sit**: *which battle happened*; ‘was done,’ pf. pass. subj.
Admagetobrigae: *at...*; locative case.
- 11 **imperāre**: Ariovīstum above is acc. subj.
obsidēs: *as hostages*
nōbilissimī cuiusque: *of each most noble person*
- 12 **qua rēs**: any thing; aliquī, aliqua, aliquod is an indefinite adj. (anyone, anything), but quī, qua, quod is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquis becomes just quis)
ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius: *at his nod and at his will*
- 14 **nōn posse**: *it is not possible (for us)*; impersonal use of inf. in ind. disc.
diūtius: *any longer*; comparative adv. diū
- 15 **nīsī**: *unless*
quid...auxili: *some help*; ‘something of help,’ partitive gen., quid is indefinite after nīsī, see line 12
- 15 **omnibus Gallīs**: *by...*; dat. of agent with passive periphrastic
esse faciendum: *must be done*; ind. disc. passive periphrastic, neuter idem is acc. subj.
quod...fēcerint: *which...*; the antecedent is idem, neuter sg.; pf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic
- 16 **ut domō ēmigrant...experiantur**: (*namely that they...*; in apposition to idem)
(et) aliud domicilium, aliās: supply a conjunction between ēmigrant and petant; aliās sedēs is in apposition to domicilium
- 17 **quaecumque accidat**: *whatsoever happens*
haec: *these things*; subj. of ēnuntiāta sint
- 18 **nōn dubitāre quin**: *there is not doubt (but) that...*; or ‘(I) do not doubt but that’
apud eum: *among him*
- 19 **sumat**: *he will exact*; nōn dubitāre quin governs a subj., here a pres. subj. that is future in sense
Caesārem: (*you*) *Caesar...*; acc. subj., the addressee of this lengthy ind. disc. is Caesar
suā atque exercitūs: *his and the army’s*; i.e. Caesar’s, the acc. subject of this clause
- 21 **nē...traducātur**: *so that...not*; neg. purpose clause

Cum-Clauses

Cum haec verba audīvit	1. temporal	<i>When he heard the words</i>
Cum haec verba audīvisset	2. circumstantial	<i>When/After he had heard these words</i>
	3. causal	<i>Since/Because he had heard these words</i>
	4. concessive	<i>Although he had heard these words</i>

32.1 Hac oratione ab Diviciaco habita, omnes qui aderant magno fletu 1
 auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. 2. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex
 omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent sed tristēs
 capite demisso terram intueri. Eius rei quae causa esset miratus ex ipsis
 quaesiit. 3. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. 5
 Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset,
 idem Diviciacus Aeduus respondit: 4. hoc esse miseriolem et graviolem
 fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem
 queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem,
 velut si coram adesset, horrerent; propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae 10
 facultas daretur, 5. Sequanis vero, qui intra finēs suos Ariovistum
 recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus
 essent perferendi.

33.1 His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit,
 pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem et 15
 beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. 2.
 Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit.

absēns, absentis: absent (pple from absum), 1
adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, (dat.), 3
auctōritās, -tātis f.: influence, clout, 4
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
caput, capitis, n.: head; leader; beginning; life, 2
cēteri, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 2
cōram: face-to-face, before (+ abl), 1
cruciātus, -ūs m.: torture, 3
crūdēlitās, -tātis (1): cruelty, 1
cūra, -ae f.: concern, worry, care, 2
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: drop, sink, 1
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus: send (away), 3
exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: press out, force out 1
flētus, -ūs m.: weeping, crying, 1
horreō, -ēre, horruī: to dread, avoid; shudder, bristle 1
implōrō (1): implore, beseech, beg, 3

intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 1
intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum: look upon, 1
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum: to wonder, be amazed at, 1
miser, misera, miserum: wretched, miserable, 1
occultō (1): hide, conceal; subst. secret, 3
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: bear, betake, 2
permaneō, -ere, -mansī: to remain, stay, 1
sōlus, -a, -um: alone, only, lone, sole, 7
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: be silent, say nothing, 3
terra, -ae f.: earth, ground, land, 2
tristis, -e: sad, sullen, sad, 1
tristitia, -ae f.: sadness, 1
velut: just as, even as, as, 1
verbum, -ī n.: word, speech, 2
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 2
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 3

- 1 **hāc orātiōne...habitā**: abl. abs., orātiōnem habēre is an idiom: ‘to make a speech’
aderant: impf. adsum
magnō flētū: *with...*; abl. of manner
- 2 **ūnōs**: *each one...*; or ‘one by one’
- 3 **eārum rērum**: *of these things*; demonstrative
quās...facere: relative clause of characteristic
tristēs: modifies acc. subj. Sequānōs
- 4 **capite dēmissō**: abl. abs. dēmittō often means ‘drop’ in this context
Eius reī...esset: ind. question, impf. subj. sum
- 4 **Eius reī**: *of this matter*; obj. gen. of causa
- 5 **Sequānī (possunt)**: supply a main verb
- 6 **Cum...posset**: *when...*; impf. subjunctives
saepius: comparative adv. saepe
- 7 **hōc...quod**: *for this reason...because*; ‘by this cause,’ abl. of cause,
fortūnam: *that the fortune...*; acc. subj. of esse
- 8 **quam reliquōrum**: *than (the fortune) of the rest*; supply fortūnam
nē...quidem: *not even...*; often emphasizing the intervening words
querī: *to complain*; dep. inf. queror
- 9 **audērent...horrērent**: impf. subj. audeō and horreō, subordinate clause in ind. disc.
- velut sī...adesset**: *as if openly he were present*; i.e. Ariovistus, impf. contrary-to-fact
- 10 **propterea quod**: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
- 11 **Sequānīs**: *by the Sequanī*; dat. of agent after the passive periphrastic below
- 13 **essent perferendī**: *had to be endured*; ‘were (going) to be endured,’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity; often translated with ‘must,’ in the present, in the past it is translated ‘had to’
- 14 **hīs rēbus cognītīs**: abl. absolute
- 15 **pollicitus est**: pf. deponent, polliceor
sibi...futūram (esse): ind. disc. with fut. inf. of sum, pf. deponent, polliceor
sibi...curae: *a concern for him*; double dative (dat. of purpose, dat. of interest), here as a predicate of futūram (esse)
sē: that he...; i.e. Caesar, acc. subj. of habēre
et...et: *both...and*; the ind. disc. that follows
et beneficiō...factūrum (esse): this ind. disc. is in apposition to spem, ‘hope’
- 16 **finem...factūrum (esse)**: *will make an end to the injustices*
- 17 **hāc orātiōne habitā**: see note for line 1

Ablative Absolute in Translation

Absolutes are circumstantial, causal, or concessive in sense, even if the translation does not reveal it.
 Cum-Clauses are just as versatile and can have a similar variety of uses within a Latin sentence.

verbīs audītīs	1. raw translation	<i>(with) the words having been heard...</i>
	2. Circumstantial	When/After <i>the words had been heard...</i>
	3. Causal	Since/Because <i>the words had been heard...</i>
	4. Concessive	Although <i>the words had been heard...</i>
Caesar audiente	1. raw translation	<i>(with) Caesar listening</i>
	2. Circumstantial	When/While <i>Caesar is/was listening...</i>
	3. Causal	Since/Because <i>Caesar is/was listening...</i>
	4. Concessive	Although <i>Caesar is/was listening...</i>

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cogitandam 1
 et suscipiendam putāret; in primis quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque
 saepe numero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat
 Germānōrum tenērī eōrumque obsīdēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos
 intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei 5
 publicae esse arbitrabatur. 3. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum
 transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano
 periculosum videbat. 4. Neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos
 existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri
 Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam; 10
 contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus
 divideret; quibus rebus quam maturime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem
 Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat ut ferendus non
 videretur.

34.1 Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret qui ab eo 15
 postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle
 sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere.

arrogantia, -ae f.: arrogance, insolence, 2

Cimbri, -ōrum m.: Cimbri (Germanic tribe), 2

cogitō (1): to think, ponder, turn over, 2

cōsanguineus, -a, -um: related by blood, kindred, 2

diciō, diciōnis f.: sway, power, sovereignty, 2

ferus, -a, -um: wild, savage, fierce, 3

hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2

inde: from there, then, afterward, 2

Italia, -ae f.: Italy, 3

mātūrus, -a, -um: early; ripe, mature, 4

medius -a -um: in the middle of, 2

occurrō, -ere: run to meet, attack, 1

paulātīm: gradually, little by little, 2

periculōsus, -a, -um: risky, dangerous, perilous, 1

placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitum: impers., it is pleasing,
is agreed 1

praesertim: especially, particularly, 2

secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable; prep. and adv.
secundum, in accordance with, following 4

servitūs, servitūtis, f.: servitude, 3

spīritus, -ūs m.: spirit, breath, breathing; courage, 1

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, receive, 4

temperō (1): refrain from, keep from, 2

Teutonī, -ōrum m.: Teutoni, Teutonian (Germanic
tribe), 2

turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful, 1

- 1 **secundum ea**: *in accordance with these things*
quārē...putāret: *whereby he thought...*; quā rē
‘for which reason,’ one expects ind. command
with ut governed by the verb hortor
sibi: *by him*; i.e. by Caesar, dat. of agent with
passive periphrastic
cogitandum (esse) et suscipiendum (esse):
must be...must be; passive periphrastic
- 2 **in primis quod**: *in particular, because...*
- 3 **numerō**: *in (the same) group*
- 4 **eōrum**: i.e. of the Aeduans
apud...Sēquānōs: *with...;* ‘among’
eōrum: i.e. of the Aeduans
quod...turpissimum...esse arbitrābātur:
which he judged was...; quod is a neuter
relative pronoun (the previous clause is the
antecedent) and acc. subj. of esse
sibi...pūblicaē: dat. of interest
- 7 **periculōsum (esse) vidēbat**: *he saw that (it
was) very dangerous that the Germans...;*
periculōsum is a acc. predicate; supply esse
temperātūrōs (esse)...quin...exīrent: *would
refrain from...going out*; fut. inf., quin + subj.
follows verbs expressing prevention or refusal
- 9 **cum...occupāvissent**: plpf. subj.
ut...fēcisset: *just as...;* ut + plpf. indicative in
direct disc. is here made plpf. subjunctive as a
subordinate clause in ind. disc.
- 12 **quibus rēbus**: *because of these things*;
- ‘because of which things,’ abl. cause
quam matūrrimē: *as timely as possible*;
quam + superlative adv.
occurrendum (esse): passive periphrastic (see
line 1); one may assume Ariovistus is the acc.
subject: ‘that Ariovistus must be encountered’
- 13 **sibi**: *to himself*
spiritūs, tantam arrogantiam: in apposition
or a conjunction ‘et’ is needed
ut...vidēretur: *so that he seemed...*; result
clause with impf. subj., videor, ‘I am seen’
may be translated as the linking ‘seem’
ferendus: *endurable, tolerable*; ‘(going) to be
endured’ gerundive (fut. pass. pple); predicate
- 15 **quam ob rem**: *for which reason*; ‘on account
of which reason’ or ‘because of which thing’
eī: *to him*; dat. sg. governed by impersonal
placuit, ‘it was pleasing’
ut...mitteret: *that...;* noun result clause
governed by pf. of placet
- 16 **utī...deligeret**: *that...;* ind. command
medium utrīusque: *inbetween each of the
two*; i.e. Ariovistus and Caesar
colloquiō: *for a conversation*; dat. purpose
velle sēsē...: *that he wanted...*; the preceding
ind. command becomes ind. statement
- 17 **dē...agere**: *to discuss...about...;* ‘to carry on
with him about...’ usual idiom for agō, agere

34.2 Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese 1
 ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. 3.
 Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partis Galliae venire audere quas
 Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento
 in unum locum contrahere posse. 4. Sibi autem mirum videri quid in sua 5
 Gallia quam bello vicisset aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negoti
 esset.

35.1 His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum
 his mandatis mittit: 2. quoniam tanto suo populiue Romani beneficio
 adfectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, 10
 hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret ut in colloquium venire
 invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum
 putaret, haec esse quae ab eō postularet: 3. primum, ne quam multitudinem
 hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde obsides quos
 haberet ab Aeduis redderet, Sequanisque permetteret ut quos illi haberent 15
 voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos iniuriā lacesseret neve his
 sociisque eorum bellum inferret. 4. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano
 perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese,
 quoniam M. Messalla M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuisset utī
 quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae 20
 facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se
 Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: to affect, afflict, 3
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
cēseō, -ēre, cēsuī, cēsum: to judge, estimate,
 decree, 1
cēteri, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 2
commeātus, -ūs m.: conveying; supplies, provisions 4
commūnis, -e: common, 4
consulātus, -ūs f.: consulship, 1
contrahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum: to draw together,
 constrict, 1
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensus: ward off, repel, 4
deinde: then, next, from that place, 4
gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: weigh down, burden, 1
invītō (1): to invite, 1
laccēsō, -ere, -ivī: provoke, goad, irritate, 3
légatio, -ōnis f.: embassy, envoy, 4
Messāl(l)a, -ae m.: Messala (M. Valerius Messala), 2

mīrus, -a, -um: wonderful, marvelous, 2
mōlimentum, -ī m.: trouble, 1
neglegō, ere, -lēxī, neglēctum: to neglect, 2
negōtium, ī n.: business, task, 2
nēvē: or not, and not, nor, 3
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: to allow, permit; let
 through, 2
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 3
possideō, -ēre, possēdī, possessum: hold possess, 1
praetereā: besides, hereafter, 3
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
quoniam: since, inasmuch as, 4
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: give back, return, 4
rēx, rēgis m.: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 4
ut: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 74

- 1 **Eī**: *this...*; demonstrative adjective
tribunes of the soldiers whom...; tribūnōs is
antecedent—not part of—quōs...habēbat
sī quid...opus esset: *if he had any need from
Caesar...*; ‘if there were any need from Caesar
for (Ariovistus) himself’ opus est, “there is a
need’ governs a dat. of the person needing; in
direct speech we would expect dat. mihi, the
clause is contrary-to-fact
sēsē...ventūrum fuisse: *he would have come
to him*; i.e. Ariovistus to Caesar; the apodosis
of a contrary-to-fact is often a fut. pple + fuisse
- 2 **sī ...velit, ...oportere**: present general
condition, pres. ind. volō, oporteret is 3rd sg.
impersonal ‘it is fitting’; ille, illum refer to
Caesar, sē to Ariovistus
- 3 **quās Caesar possiderent**: impf. subj., in a
subordinate clause in ind. disc.
- 5 **Sibi autem mirum viderī**: *it seemed amazing
to him*; mirum is a acc. predicate
quid...negōtī esset: ind. question, plpf. subj.
- 6 **quam bellō vīcisset**: *which...*; relative clause
- 8 **Hīs...relātīs**: abl. absolute
iterum: *again*; not a form of iter, itineris n.
- 9 **tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō**: *by so
great a kindness from him and the Roman
people*; suō, a reflexive possessive adj. and gen.
sg. populī are equivalent to a subjective gen.
- 10 **in consulātū suō**: *in his consulship*; i.e.
Caesar’s consulship in 58 BC
rex....amicus: nom. pred. of appellātus esset
- 12 **ut...gravāretur**: *that he...*; result clause with
sarcasm, Caesar says that Ariovistus returns
the gratitude expressed by Caesar and the
Romans by being reluctant to meet
dē communī rē: i-stem 3rd decl. ablative sg.
dicendum (esse)...cognōscendum (esse): *that
he must not talk or think*; ‘it is not going to be
said and thought by him’ passive periphrastic
(gerundive + missing esse) in ind. discourse
governed by putāret; sibi is dat. of agent
- 13 **haec esse**: *it is these things...*; neut. pl.
quae...postulāret: subj. of relative clause of
characteristic
p̄rimum: *first (of all)*; adverbial acc.
nē...trāduceret: *that he not...*; neg. ind.
command governed by postulāret
quam multitudinem: *any multitude*; aliquī,
aliqua, aliquod is an indefinite adj. (anyone,
anything), but quī, qua, quod is commonly
used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what →
anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The
mnemonic is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num,
and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words
indefinite aliquis becomes just quis)
- 14 **deinde**: parallel with p̄rimum, supply ‘ut’ for
the following ind. command
- 15 **ab Aeduīs**: governed by quōs habēret
Sēquānīque permitteret: *and that he permit
the Sequanians*; governs the following ind.
question
quōs...habērent: *(those) whom...*; missing
antecedent is the obj. of redere
- 16 **liceret**: *it be allowed*; impersonal, as often
nēve...nēve: neither that...nor that...; neg.
indirect commands with postulāret above
- 17 **sibi...futūram (esse)**: *that he and the Roman
people would have*; ‘that to him and to...there
will be...’ dat. of poss., the fut. inf. of sum
is sg. but the acc. subj. is plural
impetrāret: *i.e. Caesar obtain Ariovistus’
pledge or cooperation*
- 18 **sēsē...sē...neglectūrum (esse)**: *(he said) that
he...he would not neglect...*; acc. subj. sēsē is
repeated as sē after a subordinate clause
- 19 **M. Messalla...consulibus**: *with Messalla and
Piso (being) consuls*; 61 B.C., abl. absolute
expressing time when; without the pres. pple
for sum, the subj. and pred. are placed in the
abl. and the pple ‘being’ must be added in the
English
- 20 **quod...posset**: *as far as he was able to do in
the interest of the republic*; commodō is an
abl. of respect, reī p̄blicaē may be dat. of
interest or gen. possession

36.1 Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: ius esse belli ut qui vicissent eis quos 1
 vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperarent: item populum Romanum
 victis non ad alterius praescriptum sed ad suum arbitrium imperare
 consuesse. 2. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet quem ad modum suo
 iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. 3. 5
 Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis congressi ac
 superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. 4. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam
 facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. 5. Aeduis se obsides
 redditurum non esse, neque his neque eorum sociis iniuriā bellum inlaturum,
 si in eo manerent quod convenisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent: si id 10
 non fecissent, longe his fratrum nomen populi Romani afuturum. 6. Quod
 sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem
 secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. 7. Cum vellet, congregaretur:
 intellecturum quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos
 xiiii tectum non subissent, virtute possent. 15

alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1
arbitrium, -iī n.: judgment, decision, 1
congregior, -ī, -gressus sum: gather, walk together, 4
dēnuntiō (1): announce, 1
dēterior, -ius: worse, 1
exercitātus, -a, -um: trained, practiced, disciplined, 1
fraternus, -a, -um: of a brother, brotherly, 2
impediō, -īre: entangle, ensnare, hinder, hamper, 3
invictus, -a, -um: unconquered, unconquerable, 1
longē: far, at a distant, 4
manēō, -ēre, -sī, mānsus: remain, await 1
neglegō, ere, -lēxī, neglēctum: to neglect, 2
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 4

pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum: pay, weigh 2
perniciēs, -ēī f.: destruction, disaster, 2
praescribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum: to direct,
 prescribe, 3
quoniam: since, inasmuch as, 4
quotannis: every year, year by year, 1
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: give back, return, 4
stīpendiārius, -a, -um: tributary, pay, 2
subeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: approach, undergo, 2
tectum, -ī n.: roof; shelter, 1
temptō (1): to attempt; attack; test, feel, probe, 2
vectīgal, -ālis n.: tax, tribute; revenue, 2

- 1 **iūs esse bellī**: *it is the right of war that*
ut...imperārent: noun result clause
quī vicissent: (*these*) *who*; missing antecedent is subject of imperārent
eīs quōs: *those whom...*; eīs, obj. of imperārent
- 2 **quem ad modum**: *according to what manner, in what manner*
vellent: impf. subj. vōlō, relative clause of characteristic
populum...consuēsse: ind. disc., with pf. inf.
- 3 **victīs**: (*those*) *conquered*; obj. of imperāre
ad...ad: *according to...according to*
alteriūs: gen. sg. of a pronomial adjective
- 4 **ipse**: i.e. Caesar
populō Rōmānō: dat. obj. of compound verb
quem ad modum: see line 2
- 4 **ūteretur**: impf. deponent ūtor governs an abl. object; ind. question
- 5 **nōn oportere**: *it is not fitting*; impersonal verb
sēsē...impedīrī: *that he...*; i.e. Ariovistus
- 6 **temptā(vi)ssent**: sycopated plpf.
- 6 **congressī (essent)**: plpf. pass. subjunctive
stipendāriōs: acc. predicate after factōs esse
- 7 **iniūriam facere**: *committed an injustice*
quī...faceret: *who made the tribute worse*; detēriōra is a predicate; subordinate clause made subj. in ind. discourse
- 8 **Aeduīs**: *to the Aeduans*; dat. indirect object of fut. inf. reddītūrum esse
- 9 **neque hīs neque...sociīs**: *neither on these nor on their allies*; dat. of compound verb
iniūria: *with injustice*; abl. of manner
inlatūrum (esse): fut. act. inf. inferō; supply a missing subject (sē) from above
- 10 **in eō...quod convēnisset**: *in that (condition) which it has been agreed*; impersonal
sī...fēcissent *if they had not done this*; i.e. continued to pay tribute
- 11 **longē...āfutūrum (esse)**: *the Roman people's name of a brother would be far absent for these*; fut. inf. absum; i.e. they would not find help
quod...neglectūrum: (*as for the fact*) *that...*
- 12 **sē...neglectūrum (esse)**: acc. subj., i.e. Caesar
- 13 **sēcum sine suā perniciē**: *with him (i.e. Ariovistus) without his (i.e. neminem) ruin*; reflexives have different antecedents
Cum vellet, congrederētur: *if he wished, he could join them*; i.e. Caesar, the Aeduans
- 14 **intellectūrum (esse)**: *he would realize*
quid...possent: *what...were capable of*; or 'what power... had' inner acc. or adverbial acc. in an ind. question
inter...xiii: equivalent to duration of time
- 15 **subissent**: *had gone under*; plpf. subj. subeō
virtūte: *in valor*; abl. of respect

Impersonal Verb Constructions

Impersonal verbs are found in the 3rd sg. and translated with the subject "it." The passive of an intransitive verb (e.g. ventum est) is often used impersonally with dat. of agent but should be translated actively.

accidit	it happens + ut (noun result clause)	p. 18, 20, 28, 32, 48, 50, 56
constat	it is agreed	p. 18, 34
fās est	it is right + inf.	p. 28
fit	it happens/is done + ut (noun result clause)	p. 56
licet	it is allowed + inf.	p. 10, 32, 46, 52, 58
oportet	it is desirable/fitting/necessary + inf.	p. 6, 18
potest	it is possible	p. 10, 50
videtur	it seems +ut (noun result clause)	p. 52
cōnsurgitur	they rise (it is arisen)	p. 46
perventum est	they arrived (it was arrived)	p. 38
pugnārētur	they were fighting (it was fought)	p. 52, 64
pugnātum est	each side fought (it was fought by each side)	p. 14
resistitur	our men resisted (it was resisted by our men)	p. 56
ventum est	they came (it has been come)	p. 16, 38

37.1 Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab 1
 Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: 2. Aedui questum quod Harudes, qui nuper in
 Galliam transportati essent, finēs eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus
 quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: 3. Treveri autem, pagos
 centum Sueborum ad ripas Rheni consedis, qui Rhenum transire 5
 conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. 4. Quibus rebus
 Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova
 manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese coniunxisset, minus
 facile resisti posset. 5. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit
 comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 10

38.1 Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis
 omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum
 Sequanorum, contendere triduae viam a suis finibus profecisse. 2. Id ne
 accideret, magno opere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. 3. Namque
 omnium rerum quae ad bellum usuī erant summa erat in eo oppido facultas; 15
 4. idque naturā loci sic muniebatur ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret
 facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene
 totum oppidum cingit; 5. reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum M
 sescentorum, quā flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut
 radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. 6. Hunc murus 20
 circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. 7. Huc Caesar magnis
 nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium
 collocat.

altitudō, -inis f.: height, depth, altitude, 3

arx, arcis f.: citadel, hill top, 1

centum: one hundred, 2

Cimberius, -iī m.: Cimberius (individual), 1

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīctus: surround, 1

circinus, -ī m.: a pair of compasses, 1

circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus: surround, put around, 2

circumdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum: lead or draw around 1

comparō (1): prepare, acquire, get ready, 4

coniungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -junctus: join, 2

contingō, -ere, -tīgī, -tāctum: touch on, happen, 2

diurnus, -a, -um: by day, during the day, 1

Dūbis, -is m.: Dubis river (off the Arar river)

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus: make, form, 1

Harūdēs, -um: Harudes (Germanic tribe), 3

hūc: to this place, hither, here 1

mātūrō (1): to hasten, make haste, 2

mūrus, -ī m.: (city) wall, rampart, 2

namque: for, 1

Nasuas, Nausae, -m.: Nasaus (individual), 1

nātūra, -ae. f.: nature, 3

nocturnus, -a, -um: nocturnal, nightly, 1

nūper: recently, lately, newly, 3

paene: almost, nearly, 3

pāgus, -ī m.: district, canton, 3

populor, -ārī, populātus sum: lay waste, devastate, 2

praecaveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum: before beforehand, 1

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 1

prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: accomplish, produce, 1

rādīx, rādīcis f.: root; foot, base, 1

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: buy back; take back, 3

resistō, -ere, -stītī: stand still, halt; oppose (dat) 2

sescentī, -ae, -a: six hundred, 3

sīc: thus, in this way, 2

spatium, -iī n.: space, room, extent, 4

Suēbī, Suēbōrum m.: Swabians, Suebi (Germanic), 4

transportō (1): carry over, take across, 1

Trēvērī, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Belgian tribe), 2

triduum, -ī n.: a period of three days, 4

vehementer: vehemently, strongly, violently, 3

Vesontīō, Vesontīōnis m.: Vesontio (Sequanian city) 2

via, -ae, f.: road, way, path, 3

- 1 **Haec...mandata**: *these commands*; ‘having been commanded’ neuter pl.
eōdem tempore: *at...; abl. time when*
- 2 **Aeduī (veniēbat) questum**: *the Aeduans were coming to complain*; a supine (PPP + ū or um) in the acc. expresses purpose
quod...populārētur: *because...; likely impf. subj. in subordinate clause with ind. disc. (sēsē...potuisse)*
quī...trasportātī essent: plpf. pass. subj. in a subordinate clause in ind. disc.
- 3 **finēs**: *borders*
sēsē...potuisse: *that...; pf. inf. possum*
nē obsidibus quidem dātīs: *with not even hostages having been given*; abl. absolute, nē...quidem emphasizes the intervening word
- 4 **Trevērī (veniēbant questum)**: *Treveri were coming to complain that...*
- 6 **hīs praesse**: *that...were in charge of these*; dat. of compound verb
Nasuum et Cimberium: names of two brothers; acc. subj.
quibus rēbus: because of these matters; ‘which matters’ abl. of cause
- 7 **commōtus**: as often emotional rather than physical movement
maturandum (esse) sibi: that he must hasten; ‘it is going to be hastened by him’ pass. periphrastic (gerundive + esse) with dat. of agent expresses obligation or necessity
nē...posset: *lest (Ariovistus) be able...; impf. subj. in a clause of fearing*
nova manus: *a new group*; in the protasis of a past contrary to fact condition
- 8 **minus facile**: less easily; comparative adv. and positive adv.
resistī: pass. pres. infinitive
- 9 **rē frumentāriā...comparātā**: *with the grain supply...; abl. abs.*
quam celerrimē potuit: *as quickly as it was possible*; quam + superlative (adv.)
- 10 **magnīs itinēribus**: *in long marches*; i.e. forced marches; 25-30 miles per day
contendit: *hastened*
- 11 **triduī viam**: *for a journey of three days*; acc. of extent
nuntiātum est eī: *it was announced to him*;
- i.e. to Caesar, impersonal pf. pass. and dat. i.o.
Ariovistum...contendere...profēcisse: *that Ariovistus...; ind. disc.*
- 12 **ad occupandum Vesontionem**: *for occupying...; “for Vesontio going to be occupied” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and Vesontionem as the object*
- 13 **triduīque viam**: see line 11
- 11 **Id nē accideret**: *lest it might happen*; clause of fearing with praecavendum esse
- 14 **magnō opere**: *with great effort*; sometimes as one word magnōpere, ‘greatly’
sibi praecavendum (esse): *that...; passive periphrastic + dat. agent; see line 7 above*
- 15 **omnium rērum**: *of...; partitive gen.*
ad bellum: *for war*
usuī erant: *were of use*; ‘were for a use’; dat. of purpose, 4th declension dat. sg.
- 16 **idque**: *and it*; subject of muniēbātur
sic...ut: *in such a way that...; result clause*
magnam: modifies facultātem
ad ducendum bellum: *for drawing out the war*; see line 12
- 17 **propterea quod**: *because*; ‘for this reason because,’ a pleonasm
ut circinō circumductum: *as if drawn around by a pair of compasses*;
- 18 **est...pedum M sescentōrum**: *is more than 1600 paces*; ‘is more of 1600 paces’ gen. of description following est; amplius is a comparative that, just as minus and plūs, often does not change the case of what follows to an abl. of comparison, which is what one would typically expect, but retains the original case
- 19 **quā...intermittit**: *where...*
mōns continet: *the mountain contains*
magnā alitudine: *with great height*; or ‘of great height,’ abl. of quality
ita ut: *in such a way that...; result clause*
- 20 **ex utrāque parte**: on both sides...
hunc: *this (mountain)*; obj. of circumdātus
coniungit: take hunc (montem) as object
- 22 **magnīs...itinēribus contendit**: see line 10

Indicative Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

Simple Present (Pres., Pres.)

dixī “sī credis, errās.”

I said, “if you believe this, you are wrong”

→

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre

I said that, if you believed this, you were wrong.

39.1 Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatūisque 1
causā moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac
mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute
atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepe numero sese cum his
congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre 5
potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut non mediocriter
omnium mentēs animosque perturbaret. 2. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis
militum, praefectis, reliquisque qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secuti
non magnum in re militari usum habebant; 3. quorum alius aliā causā inlātā
quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat ut eius 10
voluntate discedere liceret; non nulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem
vitarent, remanebant. 4. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas
tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur aut cum
familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. 5. Vulgo totis castris
testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ei qui 15
magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatu
praecerant, perturbabantur. 6. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant,
non se hostem vereri sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum quae
intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis
commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. 7. Non nulli etiam Caesari 20
nuntiabant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto
audientēs milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: to hide, put away, 2
angustia, -ae f.: narrowness, straitness, 4
audiō, -īre, -ivī, auditum: to hear, listen to, 3
centuriō, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
commeātus, -ūs m.: conveying; supplies, provisions 4
commūnis, -e: common, 4
congregior, -ī, -gressus sum: gather, walk together, 4
corpus, corporis, n.: body, 2
exercitatio, -iōnis f.: training, practice, 2
familiaris, -e: of the family; *subst.* close friend, 4
fātum, -ī n.: fate, death, 1
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus: carry, bear, endure, 11
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum: make up, imagine, 1
incrēdibilis, -e: unbelievable, 1
ingēns (ingentis): huge, immense, vast, huge, 1
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: come or go between, 3
interdum: sometimes, now and then, 2
lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 2
māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.: size, greatness, 2
mediōcriter: ordinarily, moderately, 1
mens, mentis f.: mind, intent, purpose, thought, 2
mercātor, -ōris m.: merchant, trader, 2
militāris, -e: military, of a soldier, 2

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum: to pity, take pity on, 1
moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 2
moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum: to move, arouse, 4
obsignō (1): to put a seal on, seal, 1
oculus, -ī, m.: eye, 2
orior, -īrī, ortus: arise, rise, spring, 3
paulatim: gradually, little by little, 2
percontatio, -ōnis f.: inquiry, 1
perturbō (1): confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 2
praedicō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī: set over, put in charge over, 3
pudor, pudoris m.: sense of shame, honor or decency 2
remaneo, ēre, mansī, mansum: remain, 1
silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 2
subitō: suddenly, 2
supportō (1): to carry up (from under), 2
suspiciō, -ciōnis f.: mistrust, suspicion, 4
tabernāculum, -ī n.: tent, tabernacle, 1
testamentum, -ī n.: will, testament, 1
timidus, -a, -um: fearful, shy, 1
tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, military tribune, 3
urbs, urbis, f.: city, 2
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

Vesontio, Vesontionis m.: Vesontio (Sequanian city) 2
vītō (I): avoid, evade, shun, 2
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 3

- 1 **paucōs diēs:** *for...*; acc. of duration
rēi frumentāriae...causā: *for the sake of grain supplies and provisions*
- 2 **nostrōrum:** *of our (soldiers)*
vocibus: *talks, conversation*
- 3 **ingentī magnitudīne...incredibilī virtūte... exercitātiōne in armīs:** *with...*; or ‘of...’, abl. of quality as a predicate of *esse* in ind. disc.
- 4 **sēsē...potuisse:** *that they...*; i.e. the Gauls, ind. disc. governed by *dicēbant*
cum hīs: i.e. with Germans
- 5 **congressōs:** *having met (in battle)*; pf. dep. pple
nē...quidem: *not even*; emphasizes intervening word
aciem: *the stare*
ferre: *to endure*; irreg. inf. *ferō*
- 6 **ut...perturbāret:** *(so) that...*; result clause
hic (timor): *this (fear)*
primum: *first*; adverbial acc.
ortus est: pf. deponent orior
- 8 **amicitiae causā:** *for the sake of friendship*
secūtī: *having following*; pf. deponent pple
- 9 **in rē militārī:** *in military affairs*
quōrum: *among whom*; partitive gen.
alius aliā causā inlatā: *some with some reason having brought up, others with another reason having been brought up*; ‘each with a different reason brought up’ the use of two forms of *alius* suggests a distributive sense
- 10 **quam...diceret:** *which (each) said...*; relative clause of characteristic; antecedent is *causā* and the understood subject of *diceret* is *alius*
sibi: *for himself*; dat. interest
ad proficiscendum: *for...*; ad + gerund (-ing) expressing purpose
petēbat ut...: *requested that...*; ind. command
eius voluntāte: *with his permission*; Caesar’s
- 11 **liceret:** *it be allowed*; impersonal

vulgus, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 3
vultus, -ūs m.: face, expression, 2

- nōn nullī:** *some*; ‘not none,’ litotes
ut...vitārent: *so that...*; purpose clause
- 12 **neque...neque:** *neither...nor*
vultum fingere: *to put on a brave face*; ‘to fashion an expression’
- 13 **aut...aut:** either...or
cum familiāribus suīs: *with their comrades*
- 14 **commune:** neuter acc. modifying *periculum*
vulgō: *by the majority*
tōtis castrīs: *in the entire camp*; place where
- 15 **Hōrum:** *of these*; possessive gen.
vocibus ac timōre: *by the words...*; means **etiam eī:** *even those...*; demonstrative subject
- 16 **militēs..quique:** in apposition to *eī* in line 15
quique: *and (those) who*; supply a missing antecedent to this relative pronoun
- 17 **equitātūi:** dative obj. of compound praesum
quī...volēbant: *(those) who...*; the missing antecedent is the subject of the sentence
minus timidōs: *less timid*; comparative adverb and acc. predicate of *existimārī*
- 18 **sē...verērī:** *that they did not fear...*; the main verb *dicēbant* is below, *verērī* is pres. dep. inf.
quae intercederent: subordinate clause in ind. disc. is by default subjunctive
- 19 **rem frumentāriam:** *grain supply*
ut...posset: *that it not be able...*; *ut* = *nē nōn* introduces a fearing clause; *ut* (*nē nōn*) means that the positive is desired and negative feared
- 20 **nōn nullī:** *some*; litotes, ‘not none’
- 21 **nōn fore...militēs:** *that the soldiers would not be heeding to his command*; ind. disc. Fore is fut. inf. of sum (alternate to *futūrōs esse*), *audientēs* is predicate and can govern a dative; *dictō* is a substantive formed from the pf. pple
- 22 **signa latūrōs (esse):** *that they would not carry the standards*; i.e. advance with military standards in hand; fut. inf. of *ferō*

Subjunctive Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

Fut. Less Vivid (pres. subj., pres. subj.)

dixī “sī credās, errēs.” → *dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrū esse*
I said, “if you should believe, you would be wrong” → *I said that, if you were to believe, you would be...*

Present Contrary-to-fact (impf. subj., impf. subj.)

dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.” → *dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrū esse*
I said, “if you believed, you would be wrong” → *I said that, if you believed, you would be wrong.**

Past Contrary-to-fact (plpf. subj. plpf. subj.)

dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.” → *dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrū fuisse.*
I said, “if you had believed, you would have been...” → *I said that, if you had believed, you would have...*

40.1 Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad 1
 id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: primum, quod
 aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur sibi quaerendum aut
 cogitandum putarent. 2. Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissime populi Romani
 amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum 5
 iudicaret? 3. Sibi quidem persuaderi cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate
 condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam
 repudiaturum. 4. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid
 tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent?
 5. Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbris et 10
 Teutonis a C. Mario pulsus, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse
 imperator meritis videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos
 tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quae a nobis accepissent sublevarent. 6. Ex
 quo iudicari posse quantum haberet in se boni constantia; propterea quod quos
 aliquamdiu inermes sine causa timuissent hos postea armatos ac victores 15
 superassent. 7 Denique hos esse eosdem quibuscum saepe numero Helvetii
 congressi non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint,
 qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: admit, apply, 2
aequitās, -tātis f.: equity, fairness, justice, 1
aliquamdiū: for some time, 1
āmentia, -ae f.: madness, 1
appetō, -ere, -ivī, -petitum: draw near, 3
armātus, -a, -um: armed, armor-clad, 1
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind(ly), useful 2
centuriō, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
Cimbrī, -ōrum m.: Cimbri (Germanic tribe), 2
cogitō (1): to think, ponder, turn over, 2
condiciō, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 3
congregior, -ī, -gressus sum: gather, walk together, 4
constantia, -ae f.: steadfastness, constancy, 1
convocō (1): to call together, 2
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 4
cūr: why, 3
denique: lastly, finally, 2
dēspērō (1): to have no hope, give up, 4
diligentia, -ae f.: diligence, attentiveness, 1
disciplīna, -ae f.: training, instruction, 1
furor, -ōris m.: rage, fury, madness, 1
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus: drive on, impel, 1
imperātor, -oris m.: commander, leader, 3
incūsō (1): to blame, accuse, 1
inermis, -e: unarmed, 1
Ītalia, -ae f.: Italy, 3

laus, laudis f.: praise, adulation, 1
Marius, -ī m.: Marius, 1
meritus, -a, -um: deserved, due, just, 3
nōs: we, 2
nūper: recently, lately, newly, 3
officiū, -iī, n.: duty, obligation, 4
ordō, -inis m.: order, line, array; status, 2
pār, paris: equal, similar, even, 4
perspicīō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: perceive, 2
plērumque: for the most part, mostly, commonly, 1
postea: thereafter, afterwards, 4
quantus, -a, -um: how great, much, many, 2
quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything, 4
repudiō (1): to reject, repudiate, 1
servīlis, -e: slavish, servile, of a slave, 1
sublevō (1): to lift up, raise up, support, assist 3
tandem: finally, at last, at length, 2
temere: heedlessly, blindly, without cause, 1
Teutonī, -ōrum m.: Teutoni, Teutonian (Germanic tribe), 2
tumultus, -ī m.: commotion, uprising, 1
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice; advantage, 6
vehementer: vehemently, strongly, violently, 3
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4
victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 3

- 1 **convocātō cōnsiliō**: abl. absolute
omniumque ordinum: *of all ranks*; modifies centūrionibus
- 2 **ad id cōsilium**: *to this council*; i.e. meeting
adhibitīs centūrionibus: abl. abs. includes omnium...cōsilium
primum: *first*; adverbial acc.
quod...putārēt: *because they thought...*; a subordinate clause in ind. disc. is subjunctive
- 3 **aut...aut...ducerentur**: *either into what direction or with what plan they were led*; ind. question governed by passive periphrastics
sibi quaerendum (esse) aut cogitandum (esse): *that they must ask and consider*; 'it is going to be asked and going to be considered by them'; ind. disc., a passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity, often with dat. of agent; in English translate in the active
- 4 **sē consule**: *while he was consul*; 'with him (being) consul'; i.e. Caesar, 59 BC; abl. abs. of subject and predicate, supply 'being' as pple;
cupidissimē: *most eagerly*; superlative adv.
- 5 **cūr...iudicāret**: *why anyone is to judge...*; ind. question, originally a deliberative subjunctive
hunc...discessūrum (esse): *that this one...*; i.e. Ariovistus, acc. subj., fut. inf. of discēdō
- 6 **Sibi...repudiātūrum (esse)**: *that Caesar was persuaded that, with his demands known and the fairness of the conditions considered, he would repudiate neither his own nor the Roman people favor*; acc.-inf. construction
eum...repudiātūrum (esse) with accompanying ablative absolutes are subject of sibi persuādētur, (direct discourse sibi persuādētur), even the pass. inf. persuādēō governs a dat. ind. object
- 8 **quod si...intulisset**: *but if he had waged...*; pf. subj. inferō
quid...verērentur: *what should they...?*
- 9 **cūr...desperārent**: *why should they despair...?*
- 10 **Factum (esse)...periculum**: *that the danger of our enemy had been experienced*; 'danger was done i.e. the Romans had faced the danger of the enemy'
patrum nostrōrum memoriā: *in the memory of our fathers*; ca. 102 B.C.
Cimbrīs...pulsīs: abl. absolute
- 11 **exercitus...meritus (esse) vidēbātur**: *the army seemed to have deserved...*; impf. videor serves as a linking verb
quam ipse imperātor: *than...*; following the comparative minorem, an obj. of comparison is in the same case as the subj. of comparison
- 12 **Factum (esse) periculum**: *that (the danger of our enemy) had been experienced*; ellipsis, supply esse and subject periculum from above
servīlī tumultū: *in the slave uprising*; i.e. Spartacus in 73-71, abl. of time when
quōs (servōs): *which (slaves)*
- 13 **aliquid...sublevārent**: *gave...some help*; or 'helped some'; adverbial acc. or inner acc.
- 14 **posse**: *it is possible*; quantum...constantīā, an ind. question is subject
quantum...bonī: *how much good*; 'hom much of good', partitive gen.
- 14 **propterea quod**: *because*; 'for this reason because,' a pleonasm
quōs...timuissent hōs: *these whom... (the Romans) had feared*; the antecedent of hōs is quōs, relative clause of characteristic
- 16 **superā(vi)ssent**: *they had overcome*; i.e. the Romans overcame Spartacus's forces
- 16 **hōs esse eōsdem quibuscum**: *that these are the same with whom...*
numerō...congressī: *having come together in rank(s)*; i.e. fought
- 17 **nōn solum...sed etiam**: *not only...but also*
superā(e)rint: *overcame, defeated*; perfect subjunctive, relative clause of characteristic
- 18 **pārēs**: predicate of esse, inf. sum governed by potuerint
nostrō exercitū: dat. with special adj. pārēs
potuerint: pf. subjunctive, relative clause of characteristic

Purpose Constructions

There are a variety of ways to express purpose in Caesar's *Commentaries*. Notice how Caesar uses purpose clauses (adverbial and relative) in early books and other constructions in later ones. The dat. of purpose is often used with *sum* or with dat. interest in a double dative construction.

			examples
ut/nē + subj.	ut/nē audīret	<i>so that he might (not) hear...</i>	pp. 4, 6, 8, 10, 46, 70
quī + subj.	quī audīret	<i>who should hear...</i>	pp. 10
ad + gerund	ad haec audiendum	<i>for hearing...</i>	p. 10, 18
ad + noun + gerundive	ad haec audienda	<i>for these things to be heard</i>	pp. 2-8, 10, 18-20, 24

40.8 Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si 1
 quaerent, reperire posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum,
 cum multos mensēs castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem
 fecisset, desperantēs iam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis ratione 5
 et consilio quam virtute vicisse. 9. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque 5
 imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi
 posse. 10. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque
 itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris
 desperare aut praescribere viderentur. 11. Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum
 Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones sumministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta 10
 matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicatuos. 12. Quod non fore dicto
 audientes neque signa latenti dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri; scire enim,
 quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam
 defuisse aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam
 innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. 13. 15
 Itaque se quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset repraesentaturum et
 proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere
 posset utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor valeret. 14. Quod si
 praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua
 non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. 15. Huic legioni 20
 Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2
an: or, 3
angustia, -ae f.: narrowness, straitness, 4
arroganter: arrogantly, 1
audiō, -īre, -īvī, auditum: to hear, listen to, 3
avāritia, -ae f.: greed, avarice, 1
brevis, -e: short, 1
cohors, cohortis f.: cohort, company, troop 2
comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum: find out, 3
confidō, -ere: trust, believe, rely upon, 3
convincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum: conquer, overcome, 1
cūra, -ae f.: concern, worry, care, 2
dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: weary, tire; discourage 1
dēsperō (1): to have no hope, give up, 4
dēsūm, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum: be lacking, lack, fail, 1
dispērgō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum: to scatter, disperse 1
diūtūrnitās, -tātis f.: long duration
enim: for, indeed, in truth, 3
facinus, facinoris n.: deed; bad deed, crime 1
fēlicitās, -tātis f.: good fortune, happiness, 1
imperātor, -oris m.: commander, leader, 3
imperītus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced, 2
indulgēō, -ēre, -dulsī: to favor; indulge; concede, 1

innocentia, -ae f.: innocence, 1
Leucī, -ōrum m.: Leuci, 1
Lingonēs, -um m.: Lingones (Gallic tribe), 3
longus -a, -um: long, 4
magis: more, rather, 4
male: poorly, badly, 1
mātūrus, -a, -um: early; ripe, mature, 4
mensis, -is m.: month, 3
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum: to move, arouse, 4
officiūm, -iī, n.: duty, obligation, 4
palūs, palūdis f.: swamp, marsh, 1
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 3
perspicīō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: perceive, 2
praecipuē; especially, 1
praescribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum: to direct,
 prescribe, 3
praetereā: besides, hereafter, 3
praetōrius, --a, -um: praetorian, of a praetor, 1
pudor, pudoris m.: sense of shame, honor or decency 2
pugna, -ae f.: battle, fight, 3
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
repraesentō (1): to do at once, do in present time, 1
sciō, -īre, -īvī (ī), -ītus: know (how), 4
simulātiō, -ōnis f.: pretense, deceit, 1

spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 2

subitō: suddenly, 2

sumministrō (1): to provide, furnish, attend to, 1

- 1 **sī quōs:** *if anyone*; quōs is indefinite after sī, nisi, num, and nē
adversum: *unfavorable*
- 2 **reperire posse:** *would be able to discover*
diutunitate belli: abl. of cause
dēfatigātis Gallis: abl. absolute
Ariovistum: acc. subject of vīcisse
- 3 **multōs mensēs:** *for...*; acc. of duration
castris ac paludibus: *in...*; abl. place where
sē: *himself*; Ariovistus is the understood subject
suī potestatem fēcisset: *had not employed his power*; suī is a subjective gen. of sē
- 4 **desperantēs...dispersōs:** modifies the missing Helvētiōs, object of adortum and vīcisse
subitō adortum: *suddenly having attacked...*; pf. deponent pple adortum modifies Ariovistum
magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte: *more because of calculation and planning than because of valor*; ablative of cause
- 5 **cuī ratiōnī...locus fuisset, hāc (ratiōne):** *for this strategy there had been room..., by this strategy*; cuī is a relative adjective, supply fem. abl. sg. ratiōne with hāc
- 6 **nē ipsum quidem:** *not even (Ariovistus) himself*; emphasizing the intervening words; Ariovistus is the missing acc. subject of sperāre
capī: *to be captured*; passive inf. capiō
- 7 **quī...conferrent:** *(those) who brought*; relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is acc. subj. of facere
rei frumentariae: *of the grain supply*
- 8 **facere arroganter:** *are acting arrogantly*
cum...vidērentur: *since they seemed*; causal cum-clause
praescribere: i.e. tell Caesar what to do
Haec sibi esse curae: *that these things serve as a concern for him*; ‘these things are as a care for himself’ ‘sibi...curae’ is a double dative (dat. interest and dat. of purpose)
frumentum: *that...*; acc. obj. of sumministrāre
- 10 **frumenta:** *crops*; acc. subject of esse
- 11 **ipsōs:** *at...*; abl. of time when
brevi tempore: *at...*; abl. of time when
iudicātūrōs (esse): future inf. iudicō

uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 4

valeō, -ēre, uī: be strong, fare well, be able, 3

vīta, -ae, f.: life, 2

- quod nōn fore...militēs (dicantur):** *(as for) that they are said that they would not be heeding to his command*; ind. disc. Fore is fut. inf. of sum (alternate to futūrōs esse), audientēs is predicate and can govern a dative; dictō is a substantive formed from the pf. pple
- 12 **neque signa lātūrī dicantur:** *nor are said (to be) about to carry the standards*
nihil: *not at all*; inner acc. of commōvērī
sē...: *that he...*; i.e. Caesar, acc. subject.
eā rē: *by this matter*; abl. of cause
scīre enim: *for (he) knew*
- 13 **quibuscumque:** *with whomsoever*
dictō audiēns...fuerit: see above, pf. subj.
aut...aut: *either...or*
male rē gestā fortūnam defuisse: *with the matter having been conducted poorly their fortune has failed*; abl. abs., pf. inf.
- 14 **aliquō facinōre compertō:** *with some crime having been discovered*; convictam esse is pf. pass.
esse convictam: *has been proven*
suam innocentiam: *that his...*; i.e. Caesar
- 15 **esse perspectam:** *has been seen*
sē...repraesentātūrūm (esse)...mōtūrūm (esse): *that he*
- 16 **quod...fuisset:** *(that) which he would have deferred to a further day*; fut. pple + plpf subj.
- 17 **proximā nocte:** *at...*; abl. time when
dē quartā vigiliā: *during the fourth watch*
ut...posset: *so that...*; purpose clause
quam primum: *as soon as possible*
- 18 **utrum...an...valeret:** *whether...or... prevailed*; ind. question
apud eōs: *among them*
Quod sī: *but if*
- 19 **sē...itūrūm (esse):** fut. inf. eō
cum...legiōne: sola means ‘alone’
dē quā: *about which (legion)*
- 20 **sibi...futūrām (esse):** *that he would have...*; ‘and to him would be...’, dat. possession
huic legiōnī...maximē: this sentence is outside the ind. discourse

41.1 Hac oratione habita, mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, 1
 summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; 2. princepsque
 decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit quod de se optimum
 iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit.
 3. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum 5
 centurionibus egerunt uti Caesari satisfacerent: se nec umquam dubitasse
 neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum iudicium sed imperatoris esse
 existimavisse. 4. Eorum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per
 Diviciacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius
 quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut 10
 dixerat, profectus est. 5. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab
 exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum
 quattuor et xx abesse.

42.1 Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod
 antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius 15
 accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. 2. Non respuit
 condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id
 quod antea petenti denegasset ultro polliceretur; 3. magnamque in spem
 veniebat pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis
 postulatis, fore utī pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die 20
 quintus.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 4
alacritās, -tātis f.: eagerness, ardor, 2
antea: before, earlier, formerly, previously, 3
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 2
centuriō, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4
circuitus, -ūs m.: circuit, circle, 2
condiciō, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 3
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 4
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 4
deinde: then, next, from that place, 4
dēnegō (1): to refuse, reject, 1
dēsistō, -ere, -stīfī: desist, cease, give up, 4
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus: lead, draw, 11
exquirō, -ere, -quisīvī, -quisītus: seek out, inquire, 1
imperātor, -oris m.: commander, leader, 3
innātus, -a, -um: inborn; innate, 1
iudicium, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial 4
mens, mentis f.: mind, intent, purpose, thought, 2
mīrus, -a, -um: wonderful, marvelous, 2

nec: and not, nor (nec,nec = neither,nor) 2
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 3
ordō, -inis m.: order, line, array; status, 2
pertinācia, -ae f.: stubbornness, obstinacy, 1
prope: near; nearly, 1
quattuor: four, 4
quinquaginta: fifty, 1
quintus, -a, -um: fifth, 1
quoniam: since, inasmuch as, 4
respuō, -ere, -uī: to reject, refuse, spit back, 1
sānitās, -tātis f.: soundness, sanity, 1
satisfaciō, -ere, fecī, factum: to do enough 2
satisfaciō, -iōnis f.: amends, reparation, apology, 1
septimus, -a, -um: seventh, 3
tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, military tribune, 3
ultrō: voluntarily; of one's will; beyond, 2
umquam: ever, 1

- 1 **habitā**: *having been pleaded*; in an abl. abs.
mīrum in mōdum: *in any amazing way*
- 2 **belli gerendī**: *of waging war*; ‘of war (going) to be waged’ a gerundive in gen. sg., when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund bellī as the obj. (bellum)
innāta est: agrees with closest subject
princeps: *first*; i.e. 10th Legio first responded
- 3 **eī**: *to him*; i.e. to Caesar
gratiās ēgit: *gave thanks*
quod...fēcisset: *because...*; plpf. subj. of alleged cause (i.e. the cause is the tribunes’ explanation, not the speaker Caesar’s)
dē sē: *about them*; i.e. about the 10th legion
- 4 **ad bellum gerendum**: *for...*; see line 2
primōrum ordinum: *of the first ranks*
- 6 **ēgerunt utī...**: *forced that...*; pf. agō governs an ind. command
dubitā(vi)sse: *did hesitate*
- 7 **dē summā...esse**: *that the judgment about the most important matters of war was theirs rather than the commander’s*
- 8 **eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā, itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum**: two abl. abs.
- 9 **ex aliīs**: i.e. among the others
eī: *in him*; i.e. Diviciacus, ‘to him’ governed by fidem
- 9 **habēbat**: Caesar is subject
ut...duceret: *so that...*; result clause
mīlium...circuitū: *by a circuit of more (than) 50 miles*; amplius is a comparative that, just as minus and plūs, often does not change the case of what follows to an abl. of comparison, which is what one would typically expect, but retains the original case
- 10 **locīs apertīs**: abl. of place where
- dē quartā vigiliā**: *during...*
- 11 **ut dixerat**: *as...*; ut + indicative
profectus sum: pf. deponent proficīscor
septimō diē: abl. time when
intermitteret: *did interrupt*
- 12 **certior factus est**: *was informed*; ‘was made more certain’, pf. pass. and nom. predicate
copiās...abesse: *that the troops*; acc. subj.
ā nostris: *from our (men)*
mīlibus passum...: *by...miles*; abl. of degree of difference
- 14 **cognitō...adventū**: abl. abs.
quod...id: *that which...*; ‘as for that which...’ quod introduces a relative clause
- 15 **posulā(vi)sset**: *he had demanded*; plpf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic
id...licere: *that it is allowed through him that that...be done*; governed by mittit
- 16 **sēque...existimāre**: *and that he (Ariovistus) thinks that...*
- 17 **eum...revertī**: *that he (Ariovistus) is returned to sanity*; Caesar thinks that Ariovistus has ‘come to his senses’
id quod: *that which*
- 18 **spem**: *expectation*; in magnam spem
- 19 **prō...beneficiīs**: *in return for...*
in eum: *toward him*
cognītīs...postulatīs: abl. abs.
- 20 **fore utī...dēsisteret**: *that he would desist from his obstinacy*; ‘it would be that he desist from his obstancy,’ this is a periphrastic form of the future in ind. disc. (futūrum esse + noun result clause)
colloquiō: *for the conversation*; dat. purpose
dictus est: *was appointed*
ex eō diē quintus: *the fifth day from this day*

Compound Verbs: the Importance of Prefixes

a/ab-	away from	mittō, -ere : send, 20	cēdō, ere : withdraw, move, 2
ad-	to, toward	āmittō : lose, let go away, 2	accēdō : approach, 5
con-	together with	admittō : admit, allow, 2	concēdō : withdraw, yield, 2
dē-	from, down from	committō : begin, entrust, 4	dēcēdō : depart, withdraw, 4
dis-	different directions	dēmittō : send down, sink, 1	discēdō : go away, depart, 9
ē/ex-	out from	dīmittō : send away, 3	excēdō : go out, depart, 3
in-	in, on, into	ēmittō : send off, 1	incēdō : walk, march, 0
inter-	between	immittō : launch into, 1	intercēdō : come between, 1
per-	through	intermittō : interrupt, leave off, 5	praecēdō : surpass, go ahead, 1
prae-	before, ahead	permittō : let through, allow, 0	prōcēdō : go forth, 3
pro-	forth, in advance	praemittō : send ahead, 2	recēdō : go back, withdraw, 1
re-	back, again	prōmittō : send forth, undertake, 0	succēdō : go up, approach, 3
sub-	(up from) under	remittō : send back, 4	
		submitō : send up, 1	

42.4 Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus 1
 postulavit ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se ne per
 insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret: alia ratione
 sese non esse venturum. 5. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa
 tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu committere audebat, 5
 commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo
 legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat,
 imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset,
 haberet. 6. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae
 legionis dixit: plus quam pollicitus esset Caesarem ei facere; pollicitum se in 10
 cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

43.1 Planities erat magna et in eā tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus
 aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. 2. Eo, ut erat dictum,
 ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar quam equis vexerat passibus
 ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo 15
 constiterunt. Ariovistus ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad
 colloquium adducerent postulavit.

aequus, -a, -um: equal, level; fair, just, 1
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4
circumveniō, -īre: to come around, encircle, 3
citrō: to this side, hither, to here, 1
cohors, cohortis f.: cohort, company, troop 2
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 3
confidō, -ere: trust, believe, rely upon, 3
constō, -āre, -stīfī: stand together, 3
dēnī, -ae, -a: ten each, 1
dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum: to draw of, pull away,
 remove, 1
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 4
grandis, -e: large, grand, great, 1
impōnō, -ere, -posuī: to place upon, impose, 4
insidiae, -ārum, f.: ambush, plot, trap, 2
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 3
interpōnō, -ere, -posuī: include, introduce, 1
intervallum, -ī n.: interval, distance, 3
irridicule: without wit, not wittily, 1

legionārius, -ī m.: legionary, soldier in the legion, 2
pār, paris: equal, similar, even, 4
passus, -ūs: pace, 15
pedes, peditis m.: foot soldier, 2
plānitēs, plānitīē f.: plain, plateau; flatness, 1
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 3
praetōrius, --a, -um: praetorian, of a praetor, 1
quīdam, quae-, quod-: certain one, someone, -thing 1
rescribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum: to write again,
 transfer, 1
spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4
terrēnus, -a, -um: earthen, of earth, 1
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 4
tumulus, -ī m.: mound, hill, 3
ultrō: voluntarily; of one's will; beyond, 2
vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectum: convey, carry, 2
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **ultrō citrōque**: *to and fro*; ‘to beyond and to this side’ modifies *mitterentur*
nē...adduceret: *that...not bring*; neg. indirect command
- 2 **quem**: *any...*; indefinite after *nē*
verērī sē: *that he feared*; ind. disc. following *postulāvit*, which also governs ind. command
nē...circumvenīrētur: *at...*; abl. of time when
- 3 **uterque...venīret**: *let each side come...*; impf. subj. would be jussive in dir. speech (*veniat*)
aliā ratiōne: *by another method*
- 4 **ventūrum (esse)**: fut. inf.
interpositā causā: *a reason having been introduced*; abl. abs. i.e. an excuse made
- 5 **tollī**: *be destroyed*; pres. pass. inf.
salutem: *safety*
equitātūi...committere: *to entrust...to*; dat. ind. object
- 6 **commodissimum esse**: *that it is most suitable...*; *eō...imponere* is the subject of *esse*
omnibus...dētractīs: with all the horses drawn from the Gallic cavalry; abl. abs. *equitibus* is dat. obj. of compound *dētractīs*
eō...imponere: *that on there to place...*; i.e. on the Gallic horses; Caesar plans to place his own soldiers on the horses of the Gallic cavalry
- 7 **cūi**: *which...*; *confidēbat* governs a dat.
quam maximē: *as much as possible*
- 8 **ut...habēret**: *so that...*; purpose
quam amicissimum: *as friendly as possible*; *quam* + superlative
sī quid opus factō esset: *if there were any need for action*; *opus est* ‘I have work with’ + abl. is a common expression for ‘there is a need for + abl.’; *quid* is an indefinite adj. modifying *opus* and *factō*, ‘action’ is the abl. object
- 9 **quod cum fieret**: *which this was done*; ‘when which was done’ Caesar uses a relative where English prefers a demonstrative
nōn irridicūle: *not without wit*; i.e. wittily; litotes
quīdam: *a certain one*; nom. subject
- 10 **plūs quam pollicitus esset**: *more than he had promised*; plpf. subj.
Caesārem...facere: *that...*; ind. disc.
eī: *for him*; dat. interest
pollicitum (esse): *that (Caesar) having promised that...*; the understood acc. modifying by *pollicitum* is acc. subj. of *rescribere*
- 11 **in...locō**: *in the position of*; i.e. a high status
habitūrum (esse): fut. inf.
ad equum rescribere: *enlists into the calvary*
- 13 **aequō ferē spatiō**: *of almost equal interval*; ‘by almost equal interval’, abl. of degree of difference
Eō: *(to) there*
ut: *as it has been said*; *ut* + indicative
- 14 **Caesar**: subject of *vexerat* in the relative clause
equīs: *on horses*; i.e. on horseback
passibus ducentis: *at 200 paces*; abl. of degree of difference
- 15 **constituit**: *(Caesar) stationed*
item: *likewise*
- 10 **parī intervallō**: *at an equal interval*; abl. of degree of difference
- 16 **ex equīs...colloquerentur**: *(demanded) that...*; in command, supply *posulāvit*
praeter sē: *in addition to themselves*; i.e. Ariovistus and Caesar
dēnōs...adducerent: *that...*; a second inf. command

Deponent Verbs in the Readings

- adgredior, -ī, aggressus sum**: attack, 1
ēgredior, -ī, -gressum: go out, disembark, 5
regredior, -ī, regressum: step or go back 1
adipiscor, -ī, adeptum: get, obtain, reach, 1
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātum: to judge, 10
auxilior, -ārī, auxiliātum: to help, assist, 1
confiteor, -ērī, -fessum: admit, reveal, 1
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātum: to try, 6
cunctor, -ārī, -ātum: to delay, hesitate 1
frūmentor, -ārī: to forage, fetch corn, 1
hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2
adhortor, -ārī, -ātum: encourage, urge on, 1
cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum: encourage, incite, 3
nītor, nīfī, nīsus sum: to struggle, lean on, 1
contestor, -ārī, -ātum: to call as witness, 1
orior, -īrī, ortum: arise, rise, spring, 3
adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum: rise up, attack, 2
coōrior, -īrī, coōrtum: arise, break out, 2
patior, -ī, passum: suffer, endure; allow, 2
polliceor, -cērī, -cītum: promise, offer, 2
potior, -īrī, -ītum: gain, win (*abl.*), 2
proelior, -ārī, -ātum: to give battle, fight, 1
proficiscor, -ī, -fectum: set out, depart, 23
profiteor, -ērī, -fessum: profess, declare, 1
prosequor, sequī, secūtum: follow, pursue 1
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 1

43.4 Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatūque in eum 1
 beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus,
 quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis
 hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat. 5. Illum, cum neque aditum neque 5
 causam postulandi iustam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea
 praemia consecutum. 6. Docebat etiam quam veteres quamque iustae causae
 necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent; 7. quae senatus consulta,
 quotiens quamque honorifica in eos facta essent; ut omni tempore totius
 Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam
 appetissent. 8. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque 10
 amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores
 velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id eis eripi quis
 pati posset? 9. Postulavit deinde eadem quae legatis in mandatis dederat: ne
 aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam
 partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum 15
 transire pateretur.

aditus, -ūs m.: approach, entrance, access, 1
afferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum: carry to, bring, apply, 2
appetō, -ere, -ivī, -petitum: draw near, 3
at: but; mind you; but, you say, 2
auctus, -a, -um: enriched, ample, enlarged, 1
beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 6
commemorō (1): to mention, relate, 1
consequor, -ī, secūtus: follow after; pursue 3
cōsulō, -ere, -sulū, sultum: consult, 2
contingō, -ere, -tīgī, -tāctum: touch, border on;
 happen, 2
deinde: then, next, from that place, 4
dēperdō, -ere, -perdidī: to lose, destroy, 1
dignitās, -tātis f.: worth, merit, worthiness, 1
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus: teach, instruct, 2
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, reptus: rescue, take from, 4
honōrificus, -a, -um: honorific, 1

initium, -ī n.: beginning, entrance, 3
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: come or go between, 3
iustus, -a, -um: just, fair, 3
liberalitās, -tātis f.: courtesy; generosity, 2
mūnus, -eris n.: service, duty; tax, gift, 1
necessitūdō, -inis f.: friendship; bonds, necessity, 1
officium, -iī, n.: duty, obligation, 4
praemium, -ī n.: reward, prize, 3
principātus, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 4
prius: before, 4
quotiens: how often?, 1
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: give back, return, 4
remittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send back, let go, relax 2
rēx, rēgis m.: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 4
tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: distribute, bestow, assign, 2
vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 2

- 1 **eō:** (to) there
ventum est: *he arrived*; ‘it was arrived’, impersonal pass., translate in the active
initio: *at the opening*; abl. of time when
sua senātusque...beneficia: *his and the senate’s favors toward him*
- 2 **quod...:** *because*
quod amicus (appellatus...senātū): parallel to previous clause
- 3 **missa (essent):** *had been sent*
quam rem...contigisse: *that this circumstance befell few*; ‘touched on few’ governed by *docēbat*
- 4 **illum...consecutum (esse):** *that that one attained...; ‘that one pursued’* i.e. Ariovistus,
cum: *although...; concessive cum-clause*
- 5 **postulandī:** of demanding, of making the demand; gen. sg. gerund
sua...praemia: *those honors from him and the Senate*; ‘his and the Senate’s honors’; i.e. from Caesar; *ea* is a demonstrative (‘those honors’) which is difficult to express in English with the possessive adjective and genitive form
- 6 **docēbat:** *he told (him)*; i.e. Caesar told him
- 7 **quam veterēs quamque...intercederent:** *how old and how just the reasons of bonds intervene for (the Romans) themselves with the Aeduans*
ind. question following *docēbat*
quae...consulta: *what resolutions of the Senate*; continuing the ind. question
- 8 **quōtiēns...essent:** *how many and how honorific were made for them*; neuter plural agrees with *consulta*
ut...tenuissent: *how...had held*; ind. question
omni tempore: *at all times*; abl. time when
tōtius: gen. sg. pronomial with gen. sg. Galliae
- 9 **prius etiam quam:** *even before...; ‘even earlier than...’*
- 10 **Populī Rōmānī:** gen. sg. of *consuetudinem*
ut...velit: *so that he wishes...; result clause following consuetudinem*; pres. subj. *volō*
- 11 **nōn modo...sed (etiam):** *not only...but also*
suī nihil: *nothing of their own*; partitive gen.
auctiōrēs: *richer in*; with abl. of respect
- 12 **quod...id:** *that which...; the antecedent id follows the relative clause*
vērō: *in fact, in truth*
id...posset: *who would be able to endure that that...be stolen from them*; *eīs* is dat. of compound verb, *ēripī* is pres. pass. inf. and *patī* is pres. deponent inf.
- 13 **eadem:** *the same things*; neuter plural
nē...inferret: *that he not...; neg. ind. command, subject is Ariovistus*
- 14 **Aeduīs...sociīs:** *on...; dat. of compound*
obsidēs redderet: continuing the ind. command
- 15 **domum:** *homeward*; place to which
nē quōs...paterētur: *that they not allow anyone...; neg. ind. command, quōs is indefinite acc. object of patior*
amplius: *more*

44.1 Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus 1
 multa praedicavit: 2. transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte sed rogatum et
 accersitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum
 propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides
 ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli quod victores victis 5
 imponere consuerint. 3. Non sese Gallis sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse;
 omnis Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra
 habuisse; eas omnēs copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si
 iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; 4. si pace uti velint,
 iniquum esse de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad id tempus 10
 pependerit. 5. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non
 detrimento, esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum
 stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese
 recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam quam appetierit. 6. Quod
 multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non 15
 Galliae impugnandae causā facere: eius rei testimonium esse quod nisi
 rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit sed defenderit. 7. Se prius in
 Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum.

accersō, -ere, -sīvī, -ītum: summon, send for, 1
appetō, -ere, -ivī, -petitum: seek, draw near, 3
dēcertō (1): fight to the finish, fight decisively, 2
dēditicius, -a, -um: surrendered; *subst.* captives, 2
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensus: ward off, repel, 4
dētrimentum, -ī, n.: harm, loss, damage, 1
experior, -irī, expertus sum: to experience, try, 2
impōnō, -ere, -posuī: to place upon, impose,?????????2
impugnō (1): attack, fight on, 1
inīquus, -a, -um: uneven, unequal, not fair, 2
libenter: gladly, willingly, 1
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3
ornamentum, -ī n.: equipment, 1

pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum: pay, weigh 2
praedicō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2
praemium, -ī n.: reward, prize, 3
prius: before, 4
propinquus, -a, -um: near, neighboring, 3
recūsō (1): to object to, refuse, reject, 3
remittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send back, let go, relax 2
sēdēs, -is f.: seat, 3
sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2
subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum: to draw away,
 withdraw, 1
testimonium, -īī n.: witness, evidence, 1
victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 3

- 1 **postulāta**: *demands*
pauca: *few things*; neuter pl. acc. direct object
- 2 **multa**: *many things*; direct object
sēsē: *that he...*; acc. subj. (Ariovistus) ind. disc.
suā sponte: *of his own will*; abl. of manner
rogātum, accersitum: *having been asked and having been summoned*; pf. passive participles
- 4 **concessās**: *given up*; PPP modifies *sedēs*
ipsōrum: *of the (Aeduans) themselves*
- 5 **iure bellī**: *by right of war*; abl. cause or means
quod: *which...*; neuter *iure* is the antecedent
consuerint: *were accustomed*; pf. subjunctive in a subordinate clause in ind. discourse
- 6 **sēsē Gallīs (bellum intulisse)**: supply a verb and inf. (pf. inf. *inferō*); *inferō* governs a dat. of compound: ‘on the Gauls’
- 7 **ad sē oppugnandum**: *for attacking them*; ‘for themselves (going) to be attacked’, ad + acc. + gerundive expressing purpose; employ a gerundive-gerund flip
- 8 **eās omnēs copiās**: *all these troops*; acc. subj. of pf. pass. *pulsās (esse)* and *superatās (esse)*
- 9 **pace ūtī**: *to engaged in peace*; ‘to employ peace’ dep. inf. *ūtōr* governs an abl. object
- 10 **iniquum esse**: *it is unjust...*; *recusāre* is the inf. subject
quod: *which...*; *stipendiō* is the antecedent
- 10 **suā voluntāte**: *by their own will*
ad id tempus: *until this time*; ‘up to’
- 11 **pependerint**: *paid*; pf. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse
Amicitiam...oportere: *it is fitting that the*
friendship of the Roman people serve for himself as a ornament and safeguard, not a harm; ‘is to himself for an ornament...’
double dative (dative of interest and three dative of purposes)
- 12 **idque**: *and...it*; i.e. the friendship, obj. of inf.
- eā spē**: *with this expectation*; abl. of cause
- 13 **nōn minus libenter...quam**: *no less gladly...than*; comparative adv. and positive adv.
- 14 **recusātūrum (esse)**: fut. inf.
appetierit: *he sought (it)*; pf. subj. following *quam* in a comparison; this construction could also be translated as a relative clause, ‘which he sought’ following *amicitiam*
quod: *(as for the fact) that...*
- 15 **id sē...facere**: *he did it...*
suī muniendī...impugnandae causā: *for the sake of fortifying himself and...not attacking Gaul*; ‘for the sake of himself (going) to be fortified and for Gaul (going) to be attacked’, *causā* + preceding genitives, employ a gerund-gerundive flip and translate as gerunds and *suī* and *Galliae* as objects of the gerunds
- 16 **eius reī**: *of this matter*; demonstrative
quod...vēnerit: *that...*; pf. subj.
nisi rogātus: *except (when) asked*
- 17 **quod...intūlerit...dēfenderit**: *that...*; pf. subj. *inferō*
prius...quam: *earlier...than*; or ‘before’ comparative adv.

44.7 Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae 1
 finibus egressum. 8. Quid sibi vellet, cur in suas possessiones veniret?
 Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi
 non oporteret, si in nostros finēs impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos
 quod in suo iure se interpellaremus. 9. Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos 5
 diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum ut non sciret
 neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse neque
 ipsos in eis contentionibus quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent
 auxilio populi Romani usos esse. 10. Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem
 amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. 11. 10
 Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non
 pro amico sed hoste habiturum. 12. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese
 nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis
 per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque
 amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. 13. Quod si discessisset et liberam 15
 possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio
 remuneraturum et quaecumque bella geri vellet sine ullo eius labore et
 periculo confecturum.

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum: find out, 3
contentio, -iōnis f.: struggle, effort, 1
cūr: why, 3
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, withdraw, die, 2
dēdūcō, -ere: to lead or draw down or away, 2
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus: go out, disembark, 2
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing; grateful, 1
imperītus, a, um: unskilled, inexperienced, 2
inīquus, -a, -um: uneven, unequal, not fair, 2
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: kill, slay, destroy, 4
interpellō, -ere, -pepulī, -pulsus: interfere, interrupt, 1
labor, labōris m.: work, toil, labor, 1
mors, mortīs, f.: death, 3
nōs: we, 2
numquam: never, 3

nuntius, -iī m.: messenger, message, 2
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: crush, overwhelm, 1
possessiō, -iōnis f.: possession, 3
praemium, -ī n.: reward, prize, 3
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum: buy back; take back, 3
regiō, regiōnis f.: region, area, 1
remūneror, -āre, -ātus sum (1): to repay, pay back, 1
sciō, -īre, -ivī (iī), -ītus: know (how), 4
sīc: thus, in this way, 2
sicut: just as as, so as, 1
simulō (1): to imitate, copy; deceive, feign, 1
suspicior, -ārī, suspicātum: to suspect, 1
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over, hand down, 4

- 2 **finibus**: from...; abl. place from which
ēgressum (esse): *even if...*; i.e. although
quid...vellet, cūr...venīret?: *what does he (Caesar) want for himself? Why does he come into his (Ariovistus') possessions*; impf. subj. for deliberative subj. (pres.) in direct discourse
- 3 **hanc esse...sicut illam**: *this is...just as that (is)*; all else is acc. predicate
ut...oporteret...sic: *just as it would not be fitting...so*;
ipsī: *for him himself*; i.e. Ariovistus
- 4 **in**: *against...*
- 5 **quod**: *in that...*
sē interpellārēmus: *we hinder him*
Quod: *As for that...*
frātrēs: predicate of *appelātōs*, 'called'
- 6 **diceret**: *he said*; i.e. Caesar
imperitum...rērum: *inexperienced of affairs*
ut...sciret: *so that...*; result clause
- 7 **bellō...proximō**: *in the most recent war*; abl. of time when
tulisse: pf. inf. *ferō*
- 8 **ipsōs...ūsōs esse**: *that the Aeduans themselves did not employ*; pf. inf. *ūtor* governs abl. obj.
in eis...: *in those...*; demonstrative
- sēcum**: i.e. with the Germans
- 9 **auxiliō**: abl. object of *ūsōs esse*
simulātā...amicitiā: abl. abs.
- 10 **quod**: *because he had an army in Gaul*
suī opprimendī causā: *for the sake of crushing him*; 'for the sake of himself (going) to be crushed?'; employ a gerund-gerundive flip
habēre: *had (an army)*; supply *exercitum*
- 11 **Quī nisi decedat**: *unless he departs...*
- 12 **prō...hoste**: *as...*; 'in place of...'
habitūrum (esse): *would consider*
Quod sī: *but if...*; with pf. subjunctive
- 13 **gratum esse factūrum**: *would do (something) pleasing to...*; fut. inf.
id sē...compertum habēre: *that he discovered this*; 'that he had it discovered'
ab ipsīs: *from (them) themselves*
- 15 **Quod sī**: *But if...*
- 17 **remūnerātūrum (esse)**: fut. inf.
quaecumque...vellet: antecedent of relative is object of *confectūrum (esse)*
gerī: *to be waged*; pres. pass. inf.
vellet: impf. subj.
- 18 **confectūrum (esse)**: fut. inf., *sē* is acc. subj.

45.1 Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quare negotio desistere 1
 non posset: neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati uti optime
 merentēs socios desereret, neque se iudicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti
 quam populi Romani. 2. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q.
 Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam 5
 redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. 3. Quod si antiquissimum quodque
 tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia
 imperium: si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse
 Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

46.1 Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites 10
 Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque
 in nostros coicere. 2. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recepit
 suisque imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostēs reicerent. 3. Nam etsi sine
 ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen
 committendum non putabat ut, pulsus hostibus, dici posset eos ab se per 15
 fidem in colloquio circumventos. 4. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est
 qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis
 interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res
 colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius
 exercitui iniectum est. 20

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 4
adequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: to ride (a horse), 1
alacritās, -tātis f.: eagerness, ardor, 2
antīquus, -a, -um: ancient, 2
arrogantia, -ae f.: arrogance, insolence, 2
Arvenī, -ōrum n.: Arveni (tribe S.W. of Aeduans), 3
circumveniō, -īre: to come around, encircle, 3
dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum: to desert, 1
dēsistō, -ere, -stītī: desist, cease, give up, 4
dirimō, -ere, -emī, -emptum: interrupt, break off, 1
efferō, -ferre, -tulī, -ēlātus: raise, lift up 1
etsī: even if, although, though, 1
Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius (Gaius Fabius), 1
ignoscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: to pardon, forgive, 1
impōnō, -ere, -posuī: to place upon, impose, 4
inicīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: to hurl into, throw in, 1
interdicō -ere -dīxī -dictum: forbid, prohibit, outlaw 2
iudicium, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial 4
iustus, -a, -um: just, fair, 3
lapis, lapidis m.: stone, 1

lēx, lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 3
loquor, -ī, locūtum: speak, say, 4
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum: to earn, deserve, 1
negōtium, ī n.: business, task, 2
observō (1): watch, observe, attend to, 1
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 3
patior, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 5
posteaquam: after (+ indicative), 2
potius: rather, 1
prope: near; nearly, 1
Q.: Quintus, 1
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum: to bring back, 1
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: cast off or back, 3
Rutēnī, -ōrum m.: Ruteni (Gallic tribe), 1
sententia, -ae f.: opinion, purpose, 1
spectō (1): watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3
studium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 2
tumulus, -ī m.: mound, hill, 3
vulgus, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 3

- 1 **in eam sententiam...quārē**: *to this opinion... (namely) why...*; quā rē, ‘for which \ reason’
quārē...posset: why...; ind. question
negōtiō: *from the task*; abl. separation
- 2 **nequam suam...consuetudinem**: *neither his nor the Roman people’s custom (is) to allow*
patī: to allow; pres. deponent patior
utī...dēsereret: *that it...*; result clause
- 3 **potius...quam**: rather...than
esse Ariovistī: to be Ariovistus’; Galliam is acc. subj.
- 5 **quibus...**: *whom...*; dat. of compound verb with three verbs
- 6 **Quod sī**: *but if...*
antiquissimum quodque tempus: *some ancient time*; acc. subject of spectārī
- 8 **iudiciū senātūs**: acc. subj. of observārī
liberam: predicate of esse placed at the beginning of the clause for emphasis
- 9 **quam...suīs legibus utī**: *which...*; acc. subject of utī, inf. of ūtor, which governs an ablative
voluisset: it (Rome) allowed; ‘had be willing’ plpf. subj.
- 10 **geruntur**: *are conducted*
nuntiātum est: *it was announced*; impersonal
- 11 **propius**: comparative adverb, prope
ad nostrōs: *to our soldiers*
- 12 **in nostrōs**: *against our soldiers*
loquendī: *of speaking*; gen. sg. gerund, loquor
sē...recēpit: *retreated*; an idiom
- 13 **suīs (militibus)**: *his own men*; ind. obj.
nē...reicerent: *that they not*; negative ind. command
- quod...telum**: *any projective*; ‘any spear’, quod is indefinite after sī, nisi, num, and nē
etsī: *even if*
- 14 **proelium fore**: *there would be a battle*; fore is equivalent to fut. inf. of esse, futūrum esse
- 15 **committendum (esse)**: *that he ought to begin (battle)*; ‘that (battle) was to be begun (by him)’, proelium committere, ‘to commence battle’ is an idiom; here, a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of esse) that expresses obligation or necessity and is best translated in the active
- 15 **ut...dīcī posset**: *so that it be able to be said*; circumventōs (esse) is subject; result clause
eōs...circumventōs (esse): *that they (Germans) were surrounded...*; pf. pass. inf.
- 16 **in vulgus...**: *among the masses...*
ēlātum est: *it was spread*; pf. pass. efferō
- 17 **quā arrogantīā...interdixisset**: *(with) what arrogance...*; quā arrogantīā is the abl object of ūsus, PPP of ūtor; ind. question, plpf. subj
ūsus: *having employed*; ūtor governs an abl.
omnī Galliā: *from...*; abl. of separation
- 18 **in nostrōs**: *against our (men)*
eius equitēs: nom. subject of fēcissent
- 19 **ut...diremisset**: *so that...*; result, ea res is subject
multō maior: *much greater*; comparative adj. (magnus) and abl. of degree of difference
pugnandī: *of...*; gen. sg. gerund
maius: neuter comparative adj. with studium
- 20 **exercitū**: dat. of compound verb, iniciō

47.1 Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: velle se de eis rebus 1
 quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eo: uti aut
 iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis
 aliquem ad se mitteret. 2. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis
 quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non poterant quin in nostros tela 5
 coicerent. 3. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et
 hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. 4. Commodissimum visum est C.
 Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate
 adolescentem, cuius pater a C. Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et
 propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam 10
 Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi
 Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Mettium, qui hospitio
 Ariovisti utebatur. 5. His mandavit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognoscerent et
 ad se referrent. 6. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset,
 exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? An speculandi 15
 causa? Conantēs dicere prohibuit et in catenas coiecit.

48.1 Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris
 sub monte consedit. 2. Postridie eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias
 traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultrā eum castra fecit, eo consilio uti
 frumento commeatuque qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur Caesarem 20
 intercluderet.

adolescens, -ntis m./f.: youth, 2
an: or, 3
biduum, -ī n.: a period of two days, 2
Cabūrus, -ī m.: Caburus (Gaius Valerius Caburus), 1
catēna, catēnae f.: chain, fetter, 2
colloquor, -quī, -locūtum: to converse, 3
commeātus, -ūs m.: conveying; supplies, provisions 4
conclamō (1): cry out together, shout, 1
conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus: see, behold 1
dōnō (1): to give, grant, provide, 1
ferus, -a, -um: wild, savage, fierce, 3
filius, -ī m.: son; child, 3
Flāccus, -ī m.: Flaccus, 1
Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, 3
hospitium, -ī n.: hospitality; guest-host tie, 2
hūmānitās, hūmānitātis f.: humanity, culture, refinement, 2
intercludō, -ere, -clūsī, clūsum: close off, 2
lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 3
longinquus, -a, -um: far, distant, remote, 1

magis: more, rather, 4
Mettius, -ī m.: Metius (Marcus Metius), 2
obicīō, -ere, obiēcī, obiectum: cast, hurl, throw (into) 2
peccō (1): to err, injure, 1
post: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 2
postrīdiē: the day after, the next day, 3
praesēns, -ntis: present, instant, 4
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 3
prīdiē: on the day before, the previous day, 2
Procillus, -ī m.: Procillus, 3
prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: to move forward, push forward, 1
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold back, keep, maintain 2
scientia, -ae f.: knowledge, wisdom, 1
sex: six, 3
speculor, -ārī, spectulātus sum: watch, observe, spy 1
supportō (1): to carry up (from under), 2
ultrā: beyond, more than, besides, 2

- 1 **Biduō post:** *two days later*; ‘later by two days’, abl. of degree of difference
velle sē: *that he...*; inf. volō governs agere
dē...rēbus: *about these matters*; demonstrative
- 2 **quae:** *which...*; relative clause of characteristic
agī: *to be discussed*; pres. pass. inf. governed by coeptae (essent) and perfectae essent
agere: *to discuss*; common idiom with dē + abl.
utī: *(and he wished) that...*; ind. command; governed by velle above
- 3 **colloquiō:** *for conversing*; dat. of purpose
sī id minus vellet: *if he was less willing (to do) this*;
- 4 **colloquendī:** *of conversing*; following causa
Caesārī...vīsa...est: *did not appear to Caesar*; ‘was not seen,’ i.e. Caesar did not find a good reason for meeting
eō magis quod: *the more so because...*; ‘and by this (much) more because’, abl. of degree of difference rather than abl. of cause ‘because of this’
- 5 **prīdiē eius diē:** *the day before (this day)*; pleonasm
- 1 **retinēri...quin:** *to be restrained from...*; quin often follows verbs of hindering
in nostrōs: *against our (men)*
- 6 **Legātum ē suīs:** *an envoy from his own (men)*; i.e. from Caesar’s men; obj. of missūrum (esse)
sēsē...missūrum (esse)...obiectūrum (esse): *that he (Caesar) would...*; Caesar is subject of the main verb and antecedent of reflexive sēsē
- 7 **hominibus ferīs:** dat. of compound verb
visum est: *it seemed*; ‘it was seen’
- 8 **summā virtūte et humanitāte:** *with...*; abl. of quality modifying adulēscentem
- 10 **quā multā...utēbātur:** *which...employed fluently*; ‘which...employed much’, ūtor governs an abl.
longinquā consuetūdine: *by long custom*
- 11 **quod:** *because...*
in eō: *in him*
peccandī: *of causing injury*; gen. sg. gerund
- 12 **Germānīs...esset:** *the Germans had*; ‘were to the Germans’, dat. of possession
- 13 **utēbātur:** *experienced, enjoyed*; + abl.s
ut...cognōscerent...referrent: *that...*; ind. command
quae...Ariovistus: *(those things) which*; the missing antecedent is obj. of cognōscerent
- 14 **quōs:** *these*; English prefers the demonstrative
apud sē: *in his camp*; ‘in his domain’
- 15 **exercitū...praesente:** abl. abs.
Quid...venīrent?: *why...?*; deliberative subjunctive in ind. disc.
An speculandī causa: *or the reason for spying?*; gen. sg. gerund
- 16 **conantēs:** i.e. the Roman envoys, acc. d.o.
- 17 **Eōdem diē:** *on...*; abl. of time when
mīlibus passum sex: *six miles*; ‘by six miles’, abl. of degree of difference
- 18 **postrīdiē eius diē:** *on the next day of this day*; another pleonasm
- 19 **mīlibus passum duōbus:** *two miles*; ‘by six miles’ abl. of degree of difference
eō consiliō utī...: *with this plan, (namely) that...*; purpose clause

48.3 Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit 1
 et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei
 potestas non deesset. 4. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris
 continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. 5. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se
 Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites 5
 velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis
 causa delegerant; cum his in proeliis versabantur. 6. Ad eos se equites
 recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant; si qui graviore vulnere
 accepto equo deciderat, circumstiebant; 7. si quo erat longius prodeundum
 aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas ut iubis 10
 equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

49.1 Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu
 prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter
 passus sescentos ab his, castris idoneum locum delegit acieque triplici
 instructa ad eum locum venit. 2. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, 15
 tertiam castra munire iussit. 3. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sescentos,
 utī dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita
 cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et
 munitione prohiberent. 4. Nihilo setius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas 20
 acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris, duas
 ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum; quattuor reliquas in castra maiora
 reduxit.

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: to make equal, be equal, 1
āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 4
celeritās, celeritātis f.: speed, 1
circumstō, -āre, -stetī: stand around, 1
commeātus, -ūs m.: conveying; supplies, provisions 4
concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus: clash with 1
continuus, -a, -um: continuous, unceasing, 1
cotīdiē: daily, every day, 2
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 1
dēcidō, -ere, -cidī: fall from, 1
dēsūm, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum: be lacking, lack, fail, 1
dūrus, -a, -um: hard, harsh, 1
exercitatio, -iōnis f.: training, practice, 2
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 3
fortis, -e: strong, brave, valiant, 2
genus, generis, n.: origin, kind, sort, 1
idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 1
iuba, -ae f.: mane, hair on neck or head, 1
longus -a, -um: long, 4

mūnitio, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving, 3
pedes, peditis m.: foot soldier, 2
prōdeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: advance, go forth, 2
prōducō, -ere, -duxī, ductum: lead forward 1
prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive off, drive back, 1
pugna, -ae f.: battle, fight, 3
quattuor: four, 4
quinque: five, 3
secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 4
sēdecim: sixteen, 2
sescentī, -ae, -a: six hundred, 3
setius: less, 1
sex: six, 3
sublevō (1): to lift up, raise up, support, assist 3
totidem: so many, just as many, 1
triplex (triplicis): three-fold, triple, 3
ultrā: beyond, more than, besides, 2
vēlōx, vēlōcis: swift, fast, 1
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

- 1 **diēs continuōs quinque**: *for...*; acc. duration
- 2 **instructam**: *drawn up*
vellet: *were wishing*; impf. volō
eī: *for him*; dat of compound with dēsum
potestās: opportunity
dēssset: impf. subj. dēsum, purpose clause
- 3 **his omnibus diēbus**: *during...*; abl. of time within
castrīs: *in...*; abl. of place where
- 4 **proeliō**: *in battle*; abl. means
quō: *by which (type)*; abl. means
- 5 **numerō**: *in number*; abl. of respect
- 6 **quōs...singulōs**: *which (foot soldiers) one by one*
ex omnī cōpiā: *from all the troops*
singulī: *(the horseman) one by one*; i.e. there was an foot soldier for every horseman
suae salutis causā: *for the sake of each horseman's protection*
- 7 **cum his**: *with these*; i.e. the foot soldier
versābantur: *equitēs* are the subject
ad eōs: i.e. the foot soldiers
sē recipiēbant: *retreated*; idiom, ‘took themselves back’
- 8 **sī quid**: *if anything*; quid is indefinite after sī
dūrius: neuter comparative adjective, dūrus
sī quī: if anyone
graviōre...acceptō: abl. absolute
- 9 **equō**: *from the horse*; dat. of compound
sī quō: *if than this*; Latin uses a relative where English prefers a demonstrative; abl. of comparison governed by longius
erat prodeundum...(erat) recipiendum: *they had to advance...had to retreat*; ‘it was going to be advanced...(was) going to be taken back (by them)’ passive periphrastic expressing necessity; here, translated in the active voice
- longius, celerius**: *farther, faster*; comparative adv.
- 10 **hōrum**: *of these (foot soldiers)*; with *celeritās exercitātiōne*: *because of training*; abl. cause
ut...adaequārent: *so that...*; result clause, translate impf. subj. as impf.
- 11 **cursum adaequārent**: *make equal their running*; ‘keep up their course’
- 12 **eum...sē tenēre**: *that he (Ariovistus) held himself in the camp*; abl. of place where
nē diutius...prohiberētur: *so that he no longer...*
commeātū: *from provisions*; abl. of separation
- 13 **ultrā eum locum**: *beyond that place*
quō in locō: *in quō locō*; relative adjective
- 14 **passūs sescentōs**: *at around 600 paces*; acc. of text
castrīs: *for a camp*; dat. of purpose
aciē triplici instructā: *a triple battleline drawn up*; abl. absolute
- 16 **passūs sescentōs**: see above
utī dictum est: *as it was said*
- 17 **Eō**: *to there*
circiter...expedita: *around 16,000 light (soldiers) in number*; abl. of respect, ‘expedita’ denotes a soldier free from baggage
- 18 **quae cōpiae...perterrērent...prohibērent**: *which troops would...would...*; relative clause of purpose with impf. subjunctive
nostrōs: *our (soldiers)*
- 19 **munitiōne**: *from the fortification*; separation
Nihilō setius: *no less*; i.e. nonetheless; abl. of degree of difference, comparative adv.
ut: *as...*; ut + indicative
- 20 **munītis castrīs**: abl. absolute
- 21 **auxiliōrum**: *of auxiliaries*; i.e. troops
maiōra: *larger*; comparative adj. magnus

50.1 Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit 1
 paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit; hostibus pugnandi
 potestatem fecit. 2. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter
 meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem
 suarum copiarum quae castra minora oppugnaret misit. 3. Acriter utrimque 5
 usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus,
 multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. 4. Cum ex captivis
 quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc
 reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset ut matres
 familiae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent utrum proelium 10
 committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: 5. non esse fas Germanos
 superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

51.1 Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris quod satis esse
 visum est reliquit; omnēs alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus 15
 constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium
 numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie
 usque ad castra hostium accessit. 2. Tum demum necessario Germani suas
 copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis,
 Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos,
 omnemque aciem suam raedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga 20
 relinqueretur. 3. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs
 passis manibus flentes implorabant ne se in servitatem Romanis traderent.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: approach, 4
acriter: sharply, fiercely, 3
ālarius, -a, -um: auxiliaries, allies, wing-men, 2
captīvus, -a, -um: prisoner, captive, 2
circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus: surround, put around, 2
conspectus, -ūs, f.: look, sight, view, 3
dēcertō (1): fight to the finish, fight decisively, 2
dēclārō (1): to declare, make clear, 1
dēmum: at length, finally, 3
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3
famīlia, -ae f.: family, household, 2
fās n.: right, divine law, duty, 1
flēō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum: weep, lament, bewail, 4
generātim: by tribes, tribe by tribe, 1
Harūdēs, -um: Harudes (Germanic tribe), 3
implōrō (1): implore, beseech, beg, 3
impōnō, -ere, -posuī: to place upon, impose, 4
īstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3
intervallum, -ī n.: interval, distance, 3
legionārius, -ī m.: legionary, soldier in the legion, 2
lūna, -ae f.: moon, 1
Marcomanī, -ōrum m.: Marcomani (Germanic tribe) 1
mater, matris f.: mother, 3

merīdiēs, -eī m.: midday, noon; south, 1
mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 2
necne: or not, 1
Nemetēs, -um m.: Nemetes, 1
occāsus, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3
pandō, -ere, pandī, passum: to spread, extend, 1
pār, paris: equal, similar, even, 4
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 2
postrīdiē: the day after, the next day, 3
prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum: advance, go forth, 2
progredior, -gredi, progressus sum: advance, 1
raeda, -ae, f.: carriage, 1
Sedūsī, -ōrum m.: Sedusii (Seduni, Alpine tribe), 1
servitūs, servitūtis, f.: servitude, 3
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 4
sors, sortis f.: lot, 3
species, -eī f.: sight, appearance, aspect, 1
Suēbī, Suēbōrum m.: Swabians, Suebi (Germanic), 4
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over, hand down, 4
Tribocēs, -um m.: Triboces (Germanic tribe), 1
triplex (triplicis): three-fold, triple, 3
usque: all the way to, up to, continuously, 2

uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 4
valeō, -ēre, uī: be strong, fare well, be able, 3
Vangionēs, -um m.: Vangiones, (Germanic tribe), 2

- 1 **proximō diē:** *on...*; abl. of time when
institūtō suō: *according to his practice*; ‘in his establish (way); variation of abl. of respect
utrīque: each; abl. pl. uterque
- 2 **paulum:** *a little*; adv. acc. with progressus
pugnandī: gen. sg. gerund (-ing)
- 3 **potestātem:** an opportunity
- 3 **nē tum quidem:** *not even at that time*; *nē* and *quidem* emphasize the intervening word
eōs prodīre: *that...*; ind. disc.
circiter meridiem: *circiter* is a preposition here that governs an acc. object
- 5 **quae...oppugnāret:** *which would...*; relative clause of purpose
- 6 **usque ad:** *up to...*
pugnātum est: they fought; ‘it was fought’, impersonal perfect passive
Solis occāsū: *At sunset*; abl. time when
multīs...vulneribus: abl. absolute; *inlātīs* is pf. pass. pple of *inferō*, here ‘inflict’
- 8 **quam ob rem:** *for what reason*; ‘on account of what thing’, a common expression
proeliō: *in battle*
- 9 **quod:** (*namely*) *because...*; following *causam*; *quod* is an alleged cause and therefore governs a subjunctive (*essent*, impf. subj. sum)
apud Germānōs: *among the Germans*
ea: *this*; demonstrative modifying *consuetūdō*
ut...declārarent: *that...*; result clause
- 10 **utrum...essent necne:** *whether...or not*; ind. question
proelium committī: *that the war be begun*; acc. + inf. subject of *esset*; pres. pass. inf.; *proelium committere*, ‘to commence battle’ is a common idiom
- 11 **ex ūsū:** *of use*; or ‘of benefit,’ or ‘of service’; often a predicate of *esse*
necne: see *utrum* above; *-ne* indicates the second half of an ind. question; *nec* belongs to the second half of the question which is missing ‘*ex ūsū esset*’ through ellipsis
eās: *that they...*; acc. subject, i.e. the *matrēs*
nōn esse fās: *that it was not right(eous)*; as often, impersonal: *fās est*; *Germānōs* is acc. subj. of *superāre*

vāticinātiō, -tiōnis f.: prophesying, prophecy, 1
vesper, vesperī m.: evening, 2
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

- 12 **ante novam lunam:** *before a new moon*
- 13 **postrīdiē eius diē:** *on the next day*; *eius diē* is superfluous: ‘on the next day of this day’ abl. time when
utrīque castrīs: *for both camps*; dat. of interest
quod: *which...*; *praesidium* is antecedent
- 14 **visum est:** *seemed*; ‘was seen’ pf. pass.
omnēs alārīōs: *all the auxiliary soldiers*; ‘wing soldier’ non-Roman auxiliary soldiers were often stationed on the wings of the battle line
prō castrīs minoribus: *in front of the smaller camp*; *castra* is pl. in form, singular in sense
- 15 **quod:** *because*
minus...valēbat: *was less strong*; comparative adv.
multitudine militum: *in...*; abl. of respect
prō...numerō: *in proportion to...*
- 16 **ut...ūteretur:** *so that...*; purpose clause
ad speciem: *for the appearance*; purpose
alārīs: abl. object of *ūtor*, impf. subj.
ipse: (*Caesar*) *himself*
triplici instructā acie: *a triple battle-line having bee drawn up*; abl. absolute
- 17 **necessariō:** *by necessity*
- 18 **castrīs:** *from...*; abl. separation or dat. of compound
paribus intervallis: *at equal distances*; abl. of manner
- 20 **raedīs et carrīs:** abl. of means
nē qua spēs: *so that not any...*; neg. purpose clause; *qua* becomes indefinite after *nē*
- 21 **Eō:** *on this*; dat. of compound verb
mulierēs: acc. direct object
in proelium proficīcentēs: (*the soldiers*) *setting out into battle*; acc. d.o.
- 22 **passīs manibus:** *with hands outstretched*; abl. abs.; pf. pass. of *pandō*, *pandere* ‘spread’
flētēs: (*the women*) *weeping...*; subject
nē...trāderent: *that they not...*; ind. command
sē: i.e. the women; subject of *implorābant*

52.1 Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, 1
 uti eos testēs suae quisque virtutis haberet; 2. ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam
 partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. 3.
 Ita nostri acriter in hostis signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente
 celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostis coiciendi non daretur. 4. 5
 Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex
 consuetudine suā phalange facta impetūs gladiatorum exceperunt. 5. Reperti
 sunt complures nostri milites qui in phalanges insilirent et scuta manibus
 revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. 6. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu
 pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine 10
 suorum nostram aciem premebant. 7. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
 adolescens, qui equitatu praerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei qui inter
 aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

53.1 Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque
 prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco 15
 circiter quinque pervenerunt. 2. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare
 contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. 3. In his fuit
 Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit: reliquos
 omnēs, equitatu consecuti, nostri interfecerunt.

acriter: sharply, fiercely, 3
adolescens, -ntis m./f.: youth, 2
at: but; mind you; but, you say, 2
comminus: hand to hand, in close combat, 1
complūres n.: several, 4
confidō, -ere: trust, believe, rely upon, 3
consequor, -ī, secūtus: follow after; pursue 3
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 4
cornū, -ūs n.: horn, 3
Crassus, -ī m.: Crassus, 2
dēligō (1): to tie down, fasten, 1
dēsistō, -ere, -stifī: desist, cease, give up, 4
dēsuper: down from above, 1
dexter, -tera, -terum: right, the right hand, 3
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take out, take, receive, 1
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 3
firmus, -a, -um: strong, steadfast, 2
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum: to flee, hurry away, 1
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 3
insiliō, -īre, -uī --: leap upon, 1
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: kill, slay, destroy, 4
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come upon, find, 1
labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive, 2
linter, lintris f.: boat, skiff, 2
minimē: least of all, least, 2
nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus: obtain, meet, 1
nāvicula, -ae f.: small boat, small ship, 1

P.: Publius, 2
perpauci, -ae, -a: very few, 2
phalanx, phalangis f.: phalanx, formation, 3
pīlum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 4
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī: set over, put in charge over, 3
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus: check, pursue, control, 1
prius: before, 4
prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum: run forward, project 1
profugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum: to flee, escape, 2
quaestor, -oris m.: quaestor, 1
quinque: five, 3
quisque, quidque: each one, each person, 3
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: cast off or back, 3
repente: suddenly, unexpectedly, 1
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: replace, restore, reestablish 4
revellō, -ere, revelli, revulsum: pull back, tear away, 1
scūtum, -ī m.: shield, 3
sinister, -tra, -trum: left (hand), 2
spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4
subsidium, -ī n.: assistance, reinforcement, reserves, 1
tergum, -ī n.: back, hide, rear, 1
tēstis, tēstis m.: witness, 2
trānō (1): to swim across, 1
vehementer: vehemently, strongly, violently, 3
versor (1): be engaged, move about, live, 2
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum: to turn, 1
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 2

- 1 **singulīs legiōnibus**: *over...*; dat. of compound verb
- 2 **utī...habēret**: *so that each (legion) might have them as witnesses of their valor*; purpose
ipse: *Caesar himself*
ā dextrō cornū: i.e. the right wing or flank of the battle line
quod: *because...*
eam partem...esse: *that this part...*; ind. disc.
- 3 **minimē**: *least*; superlative adverb
commisit: *commenced*; common idiom
- 4 **nostrī**: *our (men)*
signō datō: ablative abs.
- 5 **ut...darētur**: *so that...was not given*; result
pila...coiciendī: *of throwing...*; gen. sg. gerund with neuter pl. *pīla* as acc. d.o.s
- 6 **reiectīs pīlīs**: with javelins thrown aside; i.e. they were used at a close interval
pugnātum est: they fought; 'it was fought' pf. pass. impersonal
ex consuetūdine suā: *according to their custom*
- 7 **phalange factā**: ablative abs.
excēperunt: *sustained*; 'took on'
- 8 **quī...insilirent...vulnerarent**: *who...*; relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj.
- 9 **ā sinistrō cornū**: i.e. from the left wing of the battle line
- 10 **pulsa (eset)**: plpf. pass. subjunctive *pellō in fugam*: *to flight*
- 11 **suōrum**: *of their (men)*; reflexive possessive
Id: *this*; object of plpf. subj. *animadvertisset*
- 12 **praecerat**: *was in charge over*; + dat.
quod: *because*
expeditior...quam: *more unencumbered than*; i.e. not engaged in battle as the other officers
eī quī: *those those*
laborantibus nostrīs subsidiō: *as assistance for our struggling soldiers*; double dat. (dat. of ind. object and dat. of purpose)
- 14 **restitūtum est**: *was renewed*; 'was restored'
- 15 **prius...quam**: *earlier...than*; often translated as a single word *priusquam*: 'before'
fugere: *affects (acc) with (abl.)*; abl. means *mīlia...quinque*: *about five miles*; acc. of extent; *circiter* is an adverb
- 16 **aut...aut**: *either...or*
vīribus confisī: *confident in their strength*; 'having trusted', pf. participle, abl. respect
- 17 **lintribus inventīs**: abl. absolute
sibi: *for themselves*; dat. of interest
in hīs: *among these*
- 18 **nactus**: *having attained*; pf. pple of deponent *nancīscor*
eā: *with this (boat)*
- 19 **equitātū consecūtī**: modifies *nostrī*, 'our men'

53.4 Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum 1
duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre
missam: utraeque in ea fuga perierunt; duae filiae: harum altera occisa, altera
capta est. 5. C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis
vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostē's equitatu persequentem incidit. 5
6. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem
attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem
et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum viderat, neque eius
calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. 7.
Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat utrum igni statim 10
necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse
incolumem. 8. Item M. Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54.1 Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suebi qui ad ripas Rheni venerant
domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii qui proximi Rhenum incolunt
perterritos senserunt, insecuti magnum ex eis numerum occiderunt. 2. Caesar, 15
una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo quam tempus
anni postulabat in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis
Labienum praeposuit; 3. ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos
profectus est.

aestās, aestātis f.: summer, 1
afferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum: carry to, bring, apply, 2
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 1
an: or, 3
catēna, catēnae f.: chain, fetter, 2
cīterior, -ius: on the other side, hither, 3
cōsulō, -ere, -suluī, sultum: consult, 2
cūstōs, cūstōdis m/f.: guard, watchman, 2
conventus, -ūs m.: meeting, assembly, 2
dēdūcō, -ere: to lead or draw down or away, 2
dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus: diminish, lessen, 2
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, reptus: rescue, take from, 4
familiāris, -e: of the family; *subst.* close friend, 4
filia, -iae f.: daughter, 4
grātulātiō, -ōnis f.: congratulation, addulation, 1
hibernus, -a, -um: of winter, wintry, 3
honestus, -a, -um: respectable, honorable, 1
hospes, -itis m.: guest-friend, host, guest, 1
ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 2
incidō, -ere, -cidī: fall into, fall upon, 1
incolumis, -e: safe after danger, uninjured, safe, 1
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 3
mātūrus, -a, -um: early; ripe, mature, 4
Mettius, -ī m.: Metius (Marcus Metius), 2
natiō, natiōnis f.: nation, people, tribe, 1
necō (1): kill, slay, destroy, 1
Noricus, -a, -um.: of Noricum (modern Austria) 2

occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus: kill, cut down 4
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 2
pereō, -īre, perīī, peritūrum: to pass away, perish 1
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum: follow up, pursue 2
praepōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: to set over, put forward, 1
praesēns, -ntis: present, instant, 4
Procillus, -ī m.: Procillus, 3
quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything, 4
reservō (1): lay up, save up, reserve, 1
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: replace, restore, reestablish 4
rēx, rēgis m.: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 4
sentīō, -īre, -sī, sēnsus: to feel, realize, 2
soror, sorōris f.: sister, 2
sors, sortis f.: lot, 3
statim: immediately, at once, 1
Suēbus, -a, -um: Swabian, Suebian, of the Suebi, 1
Suēbī, Suēbōrum m.: Swabians, Suebi (Germanic), 4
ter: thrice, 1
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum: to draw, drag, 1
trīnī, -ae, -a: three, threefold, triple
Ubiī, -ōrum m.: Ubii (Germanic tribe), 1
uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 4
uxor, ūxōris f.: wife, spouse, 2
victoria, -ae f.: victory, 3
Vocciō, -iōnis m.: Voccio, 1
voluptās, -tātis f.: pleasure, delight, enjoyment, 2

- 1 **Ariovistī**: *of Ariovistus*; gen. sg.
ūna Sueba natiōne: *one (was) Sueban by nation*; i.e. uxor, abl. of respect
domō: *from home*; abl. of place from which
sēcum: cum sē
- 2 **alter (uxor) Norica**: *the other was Norican*
regis Vocciōnis: of King Vocion
- 3 **utraeque**: *both*; ‘each of the two’, nom. pl.
hārum altera...altera: *one...the other of these*
ocēsa (est): pf. passive, supply ‘est’
- 5 **in ipsum Caesarem...incidit**: *falls into (the hands of) Caesar himself*
hostēs equitātū persequentem: pres. pple modifies Caesarem; hostēs is acc. d.o.
- 6 **quae...res**: *This matter...*; ‘which matter’
nōn minorem quam: *(brought) no less (pleasure)...than*; supply voluptātem attulit, missing through ellipsis; comparative parvus
- 7 **attulit**: pf. af-ferō
quod: *because*
- 8 **ēreptum**: rescued; ‘snatched’ the verb ēripiō is often used with the sense of ‘rescue’
sibi resitūtum (esse): *was restored to him*; i.e. to Caesar; hominem is acc. subject
neque eius...dēminuerat: *and (Caesar’s good) fortune had not in any way diminished from such great pleasure and joy by his destruction*; i.e. Procillus’ death; quicquam is an inner acc., e.g. ‘made any diminishment,’ or adverbial acc., e.g. ‘in any way’ or ‘at all’ as translated above
- 10 **Is**: *he*; i.e. Procillus
sē praesente: *with him being present*; abs.
dē sē...consultum (esse): *it was consulted three times by lots concerning him*; impers. pf. pass. inf. in indirect disc.
- 11 **utrum...an...**: *whether...or...*; ind. question governed by consultum (esse)
in aliud tempus: *until another time*
sortium beneficiō: *that because of the favor of the lots...*; abl. of cause
- 12 **reperitus (est)**: pf. passive
Hōc proeliō...nuntiātō: abl. abs.
- 14 **domum**: *to homeward*; cities, towns and domus and rūs do not require ‘ad’ when expressing place to which
revertī: *to return*; ‘to be turned back’ pass. inf.
quōs Ubī...perterritōs sensērunt: *whom the Ubii...sensed were terrified*; English prefers a demonstrative: ‘the Ubī...sensed that these were terrified;’ quōs is acc. subj., pf. pass. inf.
- 15 **insecutī**: *They, having pursued...* nom. pl., supply Ubii as subject
ex eis: i.e. from the Suebī
- 16 **ūnā aestāte**: *within one summer*; abl. time within or time whens
duōbus...confectis: abl. abs.
- 16 **matūrius paulō quam**: *a little earlier than...*; comparative adv., abl. of degree of difference
- 17 **in Sequanōs**: *among the Sequanians*
hibernīs: *over the winter-quarters*; dat. of compound verb
- 18 **ipse**: *(Caesar) himself*
ad conventūs agendōs: *for conducting meetings*; ‘for meetings going to be conducted,’ ad + noun + gerundive expresses purpose; employ a gerund-gerundive flip and translate as a gerund + acc. direct object
- 19 **profectus est**: pf. deponent proficīscor

	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<i>copia</i>	<i>copiae</i>	<i>legatus</i>	<i>legatī</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>
Gen.	<i>copiae</i>	<i>copiārum</i>	<i>legatī</i>	<i>legatōrum</i>	<i>proeliī</i>	<i>proeliōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>copiae</i>	<i>copiīs</i>	<i>legatō</i>	<i>legatīs</i>	<i>proeliō</i>	<i>proeliīs</i>
Acc.	<i>copiam</i>	<i>copiās</i>	<i>legatum</i>	<i>legatōs</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>
Abl.	<i>copiā</i>	<i>copiīs</i>	<i>legatō</i>	<i>legatīs</i>	<i>proeliō</i>	<i>proeliīs</i>
	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>				<u>3rd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlites</i>			<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
Gen.	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>			<i>itineris</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
Dat.	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>			<i>itinerī</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
Acc.	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>			<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
Abl.	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>			<i>itinerē</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>				<u>4th Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Gen.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>			<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
Dat.	<i>manuī</i>	<i>manibus</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornuibus</i>
Acc.	<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Abl.	<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>			<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornuibus</i>
	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>					
Nom.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>				
Gen.	<i>rēi</i>	<i>rērum</i>				
Dat.	<i>rēi</i>	<i>rēbus</i>				
Acc.	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>				
Abl.	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>				

Selected Pronouns

Nom.	<i>is</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>it</i>
Gen.	<i>eius</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>its</i>
Dat.	<i>eī</i>	<i>to/for him</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>to/for her</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>to/for it</i>
Acc.	<i>eum</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>it</i>
Abl.	<i>eō</i>	<i>with/from him</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>with/from her</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>with/from it</i>
Nom.	<i>eī</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>they</i>
Gen.	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>their</i>
Dat.	<i>eīs</i>	<i>to/for them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>to/for them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>to/for them</i>
Acc.	<i>eōs</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>them</i>
Abl.	<i>eīs</i>	<i>with/from them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>with/from them</i>	<i>eīs</i>	<i>with/from them</i>

**is, ea, id* is a demonstrative and in Caesar is often translated as “this/that” in the singular and “these/those” in the plural.

Nom.	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>who, which, that</i>
Gen.	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>whose, of whom/which</i>
Dat.	<i>cuī</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>to whom/which</i>
Acc.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>whom, which, that</i>
Abl.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>by/with/from whom/which</i>

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	<i>that</i>	hic	haec	hoc	<i>this</i>
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	<i>of that</i>	huius	huius	huius	<i>of this</i>
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	<i>to/for that</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>to/for this</i>
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	<i>that</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	<i>this</i>
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	<i>with/from that</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>b/w/f this</i>
<hr/>								
Nom.	illī	illae	illa	<i>those</i>	hī	hae	haec	<i>these</i>
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	<i>of those</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	<i>of these</i>
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>to those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>to these</i>
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	<i>those</i>	hōs	hās	haec	<i>these</i>
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>with/from those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>with/from these</i>

	reflexive pronoun	possessive reflexive adjective						
Nom.	---	suus	sua	suum	suī	suae	sua	
Gen.	suī	suī	suae	suī	suōrum	suārum	suōrum	
Dat.	sibi	suō	suae	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs	
Acc.	sē	suum	suam	suum	suōs	suās	sua	
Abl.	sē	suō	suā	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs	

Adjectives and Adverbs

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 st /2 nd	altus, -a, -um <i>high (deep)</i>	altior, altius <i>higher (deeper)</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high (deepest)</i>
3 rd	fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i>	fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, most brave, very brave</i>
1 st /2 nd	altē <i>deeply</i>	altius <i>more deeply</i>	altissimē <i>very deeply</i>
3 rd	fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>very bravely</i>

Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i>	melior, melius <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um <i>great</i>	maior, maius <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um <i>greatest</i>
parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	minor, minus <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i>
multus, -a, -um <i>much</i>	---, plus <i>more</i>	plurimus, -a, -um <i>most</i>

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	amō	amāmus	<i>I love</i>	amor	amāmur	<i>I am loved</i>
	amās	amātis		amāris	amāminī	
	amat	amant		amātur	amantur	
Impf.	amābam	amābāmus	<i>I was loving</i>	amābar	amābāmur	<i>I was being loved</i>
	amābās	amābātis		amābāris	amābāminī	
	amābat	amābant		amābātur	amābantur	
Fut.	amābō	amābimus	<i>I will love</i>	amābōr	amābimur	<i>I will be loved</i>
	amābis	amābitis		amāberis	amābiminī	
	amābit	amābunt		amābitur	amābuntur	
Perf.	amāvī	amāvimus	<i>I have loved</i>	amāta sum	amātae sumus	<i>I have been loved</i>
	amāvistī	amāvistis		amāta es	amātae estis	<i>was loved</i>
	amāvīt	amāvērunt		amāta est	amātae sunt	
Plpf.	amāveram	amāverāmus	<i>I had loved</i>	amāta eram	amātae erāmus	<i>I had been loved</i>
	amāverās	amāverātis		amāta erās	amātae erātis	
	amāverat	amāverant		amāta erat	amātae erant	
Fut. Pf	amāverō	amāverimus	<i>I will have loved</i>	amāta erō	amātae erimus	<i>I will have been loved</i>
	amāveris	amāveritis	<i>loved</i>	amāta eris	amātae eritis	<i>loved</i>
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta erit	amātae erunt	

Subjunctive

Pres.	amem	amēmus	same as indicative	amer	amēmur	same as indicative
	amēs	amētis		amēris	amēminī	
	amet	ament		ametur	amentur	
Impf.	amārem	amārēmus		amārer	amārēmur	
	amārēs	amārētis		amārēris	amārēminī	
	amāret	amārent		amāretur	amārentur	
Perf.	amāverim	amāverīmus		amāta sim	amātae sīmus	
	amāverīs	amāverītis		amāta sīs	amātae sītis	
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta sit	amātae sint	
Plpf.	amāvissē	amāvissēmus		amāta essem	amātae essēmus	
	amāvissēs	amāvissētis		amāta essēs	amātae essētis	
	amāvisset	amāvissent		amāta esset	amātae essent	

Imperative

amā amāte *love!*

Participle

Pres.	amāns (gen. amantis)	<i>loving</i>			
Perf.				amātus, -a, -um	<i>having been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to love</i>		amandus, -a, -um	<i>going to be loved</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	amāre	<i>to love</i>	amārī	<i>to be love</i>
Perf.	amāvisse	<i>to have loved</i>	amātum esse	<i>to have been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrum esse	<i>to be going to loved</i>		

videō, vidēre, vīdī, visum: to see

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	videō	vidēmus	<i>I see</i>	videor	vidēmur	<i>I am seen</i>
	vidēs	vidētis		vidēris	vidēminī	
	videt	vident		videtur	videntur	
Impf.	vidēbam	vidēbāmus	<i>I was seeing</i>	vidēbar	vidēbāmur	<i>I was being seen</i>
	vidēbās	vidēbātis		vidēbāris	vidēbāminī	
	vidēbat	vidēbant		vidēbātur	vidēbantur	
Fut.	vidēbō	vidēbimus	<i>I will see</i>	vidēbōr	vidēbimur	<i>I will be seen</i>
	vidēbis	vidēbitis		vidēberis	vidēbiminī	
	vidēbit	vidēbunt		vidēbitur	vidēbuntur	
Perf.	vīdī	vīdimus	<i>I have seen</i>	vīsa sum	vīsae sumus	<i>I have been seen</i>
	vīdistī	vīdistis		vīsa es	vīsae estis	<i>was seen</i>
	vīdit	vīderunt		vīsa est	vīsae sunt	
Plpf.	vīderam	vīderāmus	<i>I had seen</i>	vīsa eram	vīsae erāmus	<i>I had been seen</i>
	vīderās	vīderātis		vīsa erās	vīsae erātis	
	vīderat	vīderant		vīsa erat	vīsae erant	
Fut. Pf.	vīderō	vīderimus	<i>I will have seen</i>	vīsa erō	vīsae erimus	<i>I will have been seen</i>
	vīderis	vīderitis		vīsa eris	vīsae eritis	
	vīderit	vīderint		vīsa erit	vīsae erunt	

Subjunctive

Pres.	videam	videāmus	same as	videar	videāmur	same as indicative
	videās	videātis		videāris	videāminī	
	videat	videant		videatur	videantur	
Impf.	vidērem	vidērēmus		vidērer	vidērēmur	
	vidērēs	vidērētis		vidērēris	vidērēminī	
	vidēret	vidērent		vidērētur	vidērentur	
Perf.	vīderim	vīderīmus		vīsa sim	vīsae sīmus	
	vīderīs	vīderītis		vīsa sīs	vīsae sītis	
	vīderit	vīderint		vīsa sit	vīsae sint	
Plpf.	vīdissem	vīdissēmus		vīsa essem	vīsae essēmus	
	vīdissēs	vīdissētis		vīsa essēs	vīsae essētis	
	vīdisset	vīdissent		vīsa esset	vīsae essent	

Imperative

vidē vidēte *see!*

Participle

Pres.	vidēns (gen. videntis)	<i>seeing</i>			
Perf.				vīsus, -a, -um	<i>having been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to see</i>		videndus, -a, -um	<i>going to be seen</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	vidēre	<i>to see</i>	vidērī	<i>to be seen</i>
Perf.	vīdisse	<i>to have seen</i>	vīsum esse	<i>to have been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrum esse	<i>to be going to see</i>		

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	dūcō	dūcimus	<i>I lead</i>	dūcor	dūcimur	<i>I am led</i>
	dūcis	dūcitis		dūceris	dūciminī	
	dūcit	dūcunt		dūcitur	dūcuntur	
Impf.	dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	<i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur	<i>I was being led</i>
	dūcēbās	dūcēbātis		dūcēbāris	dūcēbāminī	
	dūcēbat	dūcēbant		dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur	
Fut.	dūcam	dūcēmus	<i>I will lead</i>	dūcar	dūcēmur	<i>I will be led</i>
	dūcēs	dūcētis		dūcēris	dūcēminī	
	dūcet	dūcent		dūcētur	dūcentur	
Perf.	dūxī	dūximus	<i>I have led</i>	ducta sum	ductae sumus	<i>I have been led</i>
	dūxistī	dūxistis		ducta es	ductae estis	
	dūxit	dūxērunt		ducta est	ductae sunt	
Plpf.	dūxeram	dūxerāmus	<i>I had led</i>	ducta eram	ductae erāmus	<i>I had been led</i>
	dūxerās	dūxerātis		ducta erās	ductae erātis	
	dūxerat	dūxerant		ducta erat	ductae erant	
Fut. Pf.	dūxerō	dūxerimus	<i>I will have led</i>	ducta erō	ductae erimus	<i>I will have been led</i>
	dūxeris	dūxeritis		ducta eris	ductae eritis	
	dūxerit	dūxerint		ducta erit	ductae erunt	

Subjunctive

Pres.	dūcam	dūcāmus	same as	dūcar	dūcāmur	same as indicative
	dūcās	dūcātis	indicative	dūcāris	dūcāminī	
	dūcat	dūcant		dūcātur	dūcantur	
Impf.	dūcerem	dūcerēmus		dūcerer	dūcerēmur	
	dūcerēs	dūcerētis		dūcerēris	dūcerēminī	
	dūceret	dūcerent		dūcerētur	dūcerentur	
Perf.	dūxerim	dūxerīmus		ducta sim	ductae sīmus	
	dūxerīs	dūxerītis		ducta sīs	ductae sītis	
	dūxerit	dūxerint		ducta sit	ductae sint	
Plpf.	dūxissem	dūxissēmus		ducta essem	ductae essēmus	
	dūxissēs	dūxissētis		ducta essēs	ductae essētis	
	dūxisset	dūxissent		ducta esset	ductae essent	

Imperative

dūc(e) dūcite *lead!*

Participle

Pres.	dūcēns (gen. dūcentis)	<i>leading</i>			
Perf.				ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to lead</i>		dūcendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	dūcere	<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be led</i>
Perf.	dūxisse	<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrum esse	<i>to be going to lead</i>		

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take, seize

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	capiō	capimus	<i>I take</i>	capior	capimur	<i>I am taken</i>
	capis	capitis		caperis	capiminī	
	capit	capiunt		capitur	capiuntur	
Impf.	capiēbam	capēbāmus	<i>I was taking</i>	capiēbar	capīēbāmur	<i>I was being taken</i>
	capiēbās	capīēbātis		capiēbāris	capīēbāminī	
	capiēbat	capīēbant		capiēbātur	capīēbantur	
Fut.	capiam	capiemus	<i>I will take</i>	capiar	capiemur	<i>I will be taken</i>
	capies	capietis		capieris	capieminī	
	capiet	capient		capientur	capientur	
Perf.	cēpī	cēpimus	<i>I have taken</i>	capta sum	captae sumus	<i>I have been taken</i>
	cēpistī	cēpistis		capta es	captae estis	<i>was taken</i>
	cēpit	cēperunt		capta est	captae sunt	
Plpf.	cēperam	cēperāmus	<i>I had taken</i>	capta eram	captae erāmus	<i>I had been taken</i>
	cēperās	cēperātis		capta erās	captae erātis	
	cēperat	cēperant		capta erat	captae erant	
Fut. Pf.	cēperō	cēperimus	<i>I will have taken</i>	capta erō	captae erimus	<i>I will have been</i>
	cēperis	cēperitis		capta eris	captae eritis	<i>taken</i>
	cēperit	cēperint		capta erit	captae erunt	

Subjunctive

Pres.	capiam	capāmus	same as	capiar	capiamur	same as indicative
	capias	capiatīs		capiaris	capiaminī	
	capiat	capiant		capiantur	capiantur	
Impf.	caperem	caperēmus		caperer	caperēmur	
	caperēs	caperētis		caperēris	caperēminī	
	caperet	caperent		caperētur	caperentur	
Perf.	cēperim	cēperīmus		capta sim	captae sīmus	
	cēperīs	cēperītis		capta sīs	captae sītis	
	cēperit	cēperint		capta sit	captae sint	
Plpf.	cēpisse	cēpissēmus		capta essem	captae essēmus	
	cēpissēs	cēpissētis		capta essēs	captae essētis	
	cēpisset	cēpissent		capta esset	captae essent	

Imperative

cape capite *take!*

Participle

Pres.	capiens (gen. capientis)	<i>taking</i>			
Perf.				captus, -a, -um	<i>having been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to take</i>		capientus, -a, -um	<i>going to be taken</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	capere	<i>to take</i>	capī	<i>to be taken</i>
Perf.	cēpisse	<i>to have taken</i>	captum esse	<i>to have been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrum esse	<i>to be going to take</i>		

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum: to know

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	sciō	scīmus	<i>I know</i>	scior	scīmur	<i>I am known</i>
	scīs	scītis		scīris	scīminī	
	scit	sciunt		scitur	sciuntur	
Impf.	sciēbam	sciēbāmus	<i>I was knowing</i>	sciēbar	sciēbāmur	<i>I was being known</i>
	sciēbās	sciēbātis		sciēbāris	sciēbāminī	
	sciēbat	sciēbant		sciēbātur	sciēbantur	
Fut.	sciam	sciēmus	<i>I will know</i>	sciar	sciēmur	<i>I will be known</i>
	sciēs	sciētis		sciēris	sciēminī	
	sciet	scient		sciētur	scientur	
Perf.	scīvī	scīvīmus	<i>I have known</i>	scīta sum	scītae sumus	<i>I have been known</i>
	scīvistī	scīvistis		scīta es	scītae estis	
	scīvīt	scīvērunt		scīta est	scītae sunt	
Plpf.	scīveram	scīverāmus	<i>I had known</i>	scīta eram	scītae erāmus	<i>I had been known</i>
	scīverās	scīverātis		scīta erās	scītae erātis	
	scīverat	scīverant		scīta erat	scītae erant	
Fut. Pf.	scīverō	scīverimus	<i>I will have known</i>	scīta erō	scītae erimus	<i>I will have been known</i>
	scīveris	scīveritis		scīta eris	scītae eritis	
	scīverit	scīverint		scīta erit	scītae erunt	

Subjunctive

Pres.	sciam	sciāmus	same as indicative	sciar	sciāmur	same as
	sciās	sciātis		sciāris	sciāminī	
	sciat	sciant		sciātur	sciantur	
Impf.	scīrem	scīrēmus		scīrer	scīrēmur	
	scīrēs	scīrētis		scīrēris	scīrēminī	
	scīret	scīrent		scīrētur	scīrentur	
Perf.	scīverim	scīverīmus		scīta sim	scītae sīmus	
	scīverīs	scīverītis		scīta sīs	scītae sītis	
	scīverit	scīverint		scīta sit	scītae sint	
Plpf.	scīvissem	scīvissēmus		scīta essem	scītae essēmus	
	scīvissēs	scīvissētis		scīta essēs	scītae essētis	
	scīvisset	scīvissent		scīta esset	scītae essent	

Imperative

scī scīte *know!*

Participle

Pres.	sciēns (gen. scientis)	<i>knowing</i>			
Perf.				scītus, -a, -um	<i>having been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to know</i>		sciendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be known</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	scīre	<i>to know</i>	scīrī	<i>to be known</i>
Perf.	scīvisse	<i>to have known</i>	scītum esse	<i>to have been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrum esse	<i>to be going to know</i>		

Sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be			possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can			
		translation			translation	
Indicative						
Pres.	sum es es	sumus estis estis	<i>I am</i>	possum potes potes	possumus potestis potestis	<i>I am able, can</i>
Impf.	eram erās erat	erāmus erātis erant	<i>I was</i>	poteram poterās poterat	poterāmus poterātis poterant	<i>I was able, could</i>
Fut.	erō eris erit	erimus eritis erunt	<i>I will be</i>	poterō poteris poterit	poterimus poteritis poterunt	<i>I will be able</i>
Perf.	fuī fuistī fuit	fuimus fuistis fuērunt	<i>I have been, I was</i>	potuī potuistī potuit	potuimus potuistis potuērunt	<i>I have been able, I was able, could</i>
Plpf.	fueram fuerās fuerat	fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant	<i>I had been</i>	potueram potuerās potuerat	potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant	<i>I had been able</i>
Fut. Pf.	fuerō fueris fuerit	fuerimus fueritis fuerint	<i>I will have been</i>	potuerō potueris potuerit	potuerimus potueritis potuerint	<i>I will have been able</i>
Subjunctive						
Pres.	sim sīs sit	sīmus sītis sint	same as indicative	possim possīs possit	possīmus possītis possint	same as indicative
Impf.	essem essēs esset	essēmus essētis essent		possem possēs posset	possēmus possētis possent	
Perf.	fuerim fuerīs fuerit	fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint		potuerim potuerīs potuerit	potuerīmus potuerītis potuerint	
Plpf.	fuissem fuissēs fuisset	fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent		potuissem potuissēs potuisset	potuissēmus potuissētis potuissent	
Imperative						
	xxx			xxx		
Infinitive						
Pres.	esse		<i>to be</i>	posse	<i>to be able</i>	
Perf.	fuisse		<i>to have been</i>	potuisse	<i>to have been heard</i>	
Fut.	futūrum esse*		<i>to be going to be</i>	---		

* alternative = fore

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be, 165**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, 3**dēsum, -esse, -fuī:** be lacking, lack, fail, 6**intersum, -esse, -fuī:** take part in, engage in, 1**possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 40**praesum, -esse, -fuī:** be over, preside over, 2**subsum, -esse, -fuī:** be near, close at hand, 1

eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go

	active		translation
Indicative			
Pres.	eō īs it	īmus ītis eunt	<i>I go</i>
Impf.	ībam ībās ībat	ībāmus ībātis ībant	<i>I was going</i>
Fut.	ībō ībīs ībīt	ībimus ībītis ībunt	<i>I will go</i>
Perf.	īī īstī īit	īimus īstis īerunt	<i>I went, have gone</i>
Plpf.	ieram ierās ierat	ierāmus ierātis ierant	<i>I had gone</i>
Fut. Pf.	ierō ierīs ierit	ierimus ierītis ierint	<i>I will have gone</i>

Subjunctive

Pres.	eam eās eat	eāmus eātis eant	same as indicative
Impf.	īrem īrēs īret	īrēmus īrētis īrent	
Perf.	ierim ierīs ierit	ierimus ierītis ierunt	
Plpf.	īsem īssēs īsset	īssēmus īssētis īssent	

Imperative

ī īte

Participle

Pres.	īēns (euntis)	<i>going</i>
Perf.	---	
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to go</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	īre	<i>to go</i>
Perf.	īsse	<i>to have gone</i>
Fut.	itūrum esse	<i>to be going to go</i>

Compound verbs

adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2
eō, īre, īvī, itum: to go, come, 4
exeō, -īre, -īī (īvī), -itus: go out, 4
ineō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1
intereō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: to die, perish, 3
introeō, -īre, īī, -itum: go into, enter, 1
obeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: go to meet, oppose 1
prōdeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: advance, go forth, 1
redeō, -īre, -īvī: go back, return, 1
subeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: approach, undergo, 1
trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus: pass (by), 6

volō, velle, voluī: to wish, want

	active	translation		
Indicative				
Pres.	<u>volō</u> <u>vīs</u> <u>vult</u>	<u>volumus</u> <u>vultis</u> ¹ <u>volunt</u> ²	<i>I wish</i>	← irregular present tense ¹ p. 14, 46 ² p. 28
Impf.	volēbam volēbās volēbat	volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	<i>I was wishing</i>	
Fut.	volam volēs volet	volēmus volētis volent	<i>I will wish</i>	
Perf.	voluī voluistī voluit	voluimus voluistis voluērunt	<i>I have wished</i>	
Plpf.	volueram voluerās voluerat	voluerāmus voluerātis voluerant	<i>I had wished</i>	
Fut. Pf.	voluerō volueris voluerit	voluerimus volueritis voluerint	<i>I will have wished</i>	
Subjunctive				
Pres.	<u>velim</u> <u>velis</u> <u>velit</u> ³	<u>velimus</u> <u>velitis</u> <u>velint</u> ⁴	same as indicative	← irregular present tense (not volam) ³ p.52 ⁴ p. 28, 42, 58, 60
Impf.	<u>vellem</u> <u>vellēs</u> <u>vellet</u>	<u>vellēmus</u> <u>vellētis</u> <u>vellent</u> ⁵		← irregular imperfect tense (irreg. velle) ⁵ p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62
Perf.	voluerim voluerīs voluerit	voluerīmus voluerītis voluerint		
Plpf.	voluissem voluissēs voluisset	voluissēmus voluissētis voluissent		
Imperative				
	xxxx	xxxx	<i>wish!</i>	
Participle				
Pres.	volēns (gen. volentis)		<i>wishing</i>	
Perf.	xxxx			
Fut.	xxxx			
Infinitive				
Pres.	<u>velle</u>		<i>to wish</i>	← irregular infinitive
Perf.	voluisse		<i>to have wished</i>	
Fut.	xxxx			

sequō, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow

	deponent		translation
Indicative			
Pres.	sequor sequeris sequitur	sequimur sequiminī sequuntur	<i>I follow</i>
Impf.	sequēbar sequēbāris sequēbātur	sequēbāmur sequēbāminī sequēbantur	<i>I was following</i>
Fut.	sequar sequēris sequētur	sequēmur sequēminī sequentur	<i>I will follow</i>
Perf.	secūta sum secūta es secūta est	secūtae sumus secūtae estis secūtae sunt	<i>I have followed</i>
Plpf.	secūta eram secūta erās secūta erat	secūtae erāmus secūtae erātis secūtae erant	<i>I had followed</i>
Fut. Pf.	secūta erō secūta eris secūta erit	secūtae erimus secūtae eritis secūtae erunt	<i>I will have followed</i>
Subjunctive			
Pres.	sequar sequāris sequātur	sequāmur sequāminī sequantur	same as indicative
Impf.	sequerer sequerēris sequerētur	sequerēmur sequerēminī sequerentur	
Perf.	secūta sim secūta sīs secūta sit	secūtae sīmus secūtae sītis secūtae sint	
Plpf.	secūta essem secūta essēs secūta esset	secūtae essēmus secūtae essētis secūtae essent	
Imperative			
	sequere	sequitor	<i>follow!</i>
Participle			
Pres.	sequēns (gen. sequentis)		<i>following</i>
Perf.	secūtus, -a, -um		<i>having followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to follow</i> sequendus,-a -um <i>going to be followed</i>
Infinitive			
Pres.	sequī		<i>to follow</i>
Perf.	secūtum esse		<i>to have followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrum esse		<i>to be going to follow</i>

I. Terminology:

If-then clauses are called **conditionals** or **conditional sentences**. All conditionals have two parts which we will call by the Greek terms in the grammar notes to avoid confusion: (1) the **protasis** (“premise,” if-clause, conditional clause) and (2) the **apodosis** (“result,” then-clause, consequent).

In order to identify a type of condition (note the names in boldface below), we must identify the tense and mood of the verbs in the protasis and apodosis. If we encounter verbs and moods that do not fit the modeled conditional sentences below, we call such sentences **mixed conditions**.

II. Rules in Indirect Discourse

- (1) Translate subjunctives in the tense in which you find them.
 - a. Very often readers modify the translate naturally to fit the context.
 - b. Identification of the type of condition occurs after, not before or during, translation.
- (2) Verbs in the apodosis (if-clause)—just as all subordinate verbs—become subjunctive.
 - a. In primary sequence, subjunctive verbs in direct discourse remain the same in indirect.
 - b. In secondary sequence, almost all verbs become imperfect subjunctive, which makes it rather difficult for readers to determine the tenses and types of conditions.
 - c. the protasis of contrafactuals do not change in primary or secondary sequence.

III. Types of Conditional Sentences (see also pp. 59 and 61)**Indicative Conditions**

Simple Present: If you believe, you are wrong.

dīcō “sī credis, errās.”

dīcō sī haec credās, tē errāre

dixī “sī credis, errās.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre

Future More Vivid: If you (will have) believe(d), you will be wrong.

dīcō “sī credēs, errābis.”

dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse

dixī “sī credēs, errābis.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

Simple Past: If you believed, you were wrong.

dīcō “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.”

dīcō sī haec crederēs/credideris, tē errāvisse.

dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.”

dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.

Subjunctive Conditions

Fut. Less Vivid: If you should believe, you would be wrong.

dīcō “sī credās, errēs.”

dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse

dixī “sī credās, errēs.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

Present Contrafactual: If you were believing, you would be wrong.

dīcō “sī crederēs, errārēs.”

dīcō sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.”

dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

Past Contrafactual: If you had believed, you would have been wrong.

dīcō “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”

dīcō sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.

dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.”

dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.

Caesar Book I Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following seven pages includes all 335 words in the Book 1 of Julius Caesar's *De Bello Gallico* that occur five or more times arranged in an alphabetized vocabulary list. The number at the left of the dictionary entries indicates the number of occurrences of the word in Book 1. The author tabulated the frequency lists by counting the words manually. Digital flashcards are available online.

ā, ab: (away) from, 102
absum, -esse, āfuī: be absent, lack, 9
ac: and, and also, and even, 29
accidō, -ere, accidī: to happen, fall to, 7
accipiō: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 8
aciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 18
ad: to, toward; near, at 109
addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum: draw to, influence 12
adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach, 7
Aeduus, -a, -um: Haeduan, Aeduan, 43
ager, agrī m.: field, land; farm, 16
agmen, agminis n.: battle line, 5
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 8
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 5
alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 13
Allobrogēs, -um: Allobroges, 11
amīcītia, -ae, f.: friendship, 12
amīcus, -a, -um: friendly; noun, friend, 8
amplus, -a, -um: ample, full, spacious, 7
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum: turn mind to, notice 6
animus, -ī m.: mind, spirit; *pl.* courage, 11
annus, -ī m.: year, 7
ante: before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 12
appellō (1): call, call by name, 5
apud: among, at the house of (acc.), 13
Arar, -aris (acc.) -im (abl.) -ī m.: Arar river (Saone), 5
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum: to judge, think, 6
Ariovistus, -ī m.: Ariovistus, leader of the Germans, 41
arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 12
atque: and, and also, and even, 46
aut: or (aut...aut – either...or), 36
autem: however, moreover, 8
auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 12
barbarus, -a, -um: foreign, savage, 5
barbarus, -a, -um: foreign, savage, 5
Belgae, -ārum m.: Belgians, 5
bellum, -ī, n.: war, 32
beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 6
C.: Gaius, 7
Caesar, -aris m.: Caesar, 87
calamitās, -tātis f.: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum: to take, capture, seize, 8
carrus, -ī m.: wagon, cart, 7
castra, -ōrum n.: camp, encampment, 41
causa, -ae f.: reason, cause; case, 25

celer, -eris, -ere: swift, quick, 5
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 7
circiter: (round) about, not far from, 11
cīvitās cīvitātis, f.: state, city-state, 28
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 10
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: to learn, come to know, *perf.* know, 15
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum: to collect; compel, 7
coicīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: to hurl, throw together, 5
collocō (1): place together, arrange, set up, 5
colloquium, -iī n.: conversation, talk, 13
committō, -ere: commence, commit entrust 10
commodus, -a, -um: convenient, suitable, 5
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, mōtum: move, disturb, upset, 5
concedō, -ere: go away, withdraw, yield, 5
concilium, -iī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 6
conferō, -ferre, -tulī: bring together, gather, 9
conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 8
confirmō (1): make strong, confirm strengthen, 5
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: to try, 12
consideō, -ēre, -sēdī: to sit down, settle, 5
cōnsilium, -iī n.: plan, counsel, 12
constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus: decide, establish, resolve, 11
consuescō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum: to accustom, 7
consuetūdo, -inis f.: custom, habit, 6
cōnsul, -is m.: consul, 6
contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten; contend, 20
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 5
contrā: opposite, facing (acc.), 23
conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus: come together, assemble, 6
copia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 28
cum: with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 96
dē: (down) from; about, concerning, 37
debeō, -ēre, -uī, debitum: to owe, ought, 5
decimus, a, um: tenth, 5
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, elect, select, 6
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus: say, speak, tell, call, name, 35
dīes, -ēī m./f.: day, time, season, 38
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: to go away, depart, 7
diū: a long time, long, 9
diūtior: a long time, long, 9
Diviācus, -ī m.: Diviacus, 13
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus: divide, distribute, 7
dō, dare, dedī, datum: give; grant, 20
domus, -ūs f.: house, home, dwelling, 15
dubitō (1): waver, be uncertain, hesitate, 5
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus: lead, draw, 11
dum: while, as long as, until, 5
Dumnorix, -īgis m.: Dumnorix, 10
duo, duae, duo: two, 12
ē, ex: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 64
ēnuntiō (1): announce, speak out, divulge, 7
eō, ire, ivī, itum: to go, come, 10
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 10

equitātus, -ūs m.: cavalry, 17
equus, -ī m.: horse, 8
et: and, also, even, 196
etiam: besides, also, even, 17
exeō, -īre, -ī (ivī), -itus: go out, 6
exercitus, -ūs m.: (trained) army, 27
existimō (1): judge, consider, think, 13
explōrātor, -ōris m.: scout, spy, 5
facilis, -e: easy; *adv.* facile, easily, 9
faciō, -ere, fecī, factum: do, make, perform; grant, 70
facultās, -tātis f.: opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus: carry, bear, endure, 11
fidēs, eī f.: faith, honor, 6
finis, -is m./f.: end, border; territory, 38
finitimus, -a, -um: neighboring; *subst.* neighbors, 5
fiō, fierī, factus: become, be made, 5
flūmen, -inis n.: river, stream, 22
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 6
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 11
frūmentārius, -a, -um: of grain, full of grain, 7
frūmentum, -ī n.: grain, 13
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 12
Gallia, -ae f.: Gaul, 51
Gallus, -a, -um: Gallic; *subst.* a Gaul, 20
Germānus, -a, -um: German, 25
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus: carry (on), wage, 8
grātia, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks, 13
gravis, -e: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9
habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus: have, hold; consider, 45
Helvētius, -a, -um: Helvetian; *subst.* a Helvetian 64
hic, haec, hoc: this, these, 82
homō, -inis m./f.: man, mortal, human, 22
hostis, -is m./f.: stranger, enemy, foe, 38
iam: now, already, soon, 8
ibi: there, in that place, 7
īdem, eadem, idem: the same, 20
ille, illa, illud: that, those, 18
ille, illa, illud: that, those, 19
impedīmentum, -ī n.: baggage, impediment, 5
imperium, -ī n.: command, power, 9
imperō (1): command, order, bid, 9
impetrō (1): obtain, accomplish, 5
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 8
in: in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 182
incolō, -ere, -uī: inhabit, dwell on, 5
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum: wage, carry on, bring on, 13
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 16
instruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum: equip, prepare, draw up, 6
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum: to understand, 13
inter: between, among (+ acc.), 17
intermittō, -ere: to interrupt, discontinue, intervene, 5
ipse, ipsa, ipsum: -self; the very, 48

is, ea, id: this, that; he, she, it, 286
ita: so, thus, 17
itaque: and so, 5
item: also, likewise, in like manner, 8
iter, itineris n.: way, road, journey, 33
iterum: again, a second time, 5
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum: to order, command, 15
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 6
iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 11
L.: Lucius, 7
Labiēnus, ī m.: Labienus, 7
lēgātus, -ī m.: an envoy, legate, 23
legiō, -ōnis f.: legion, (4200 soldiers), 19
liber, libera, liberum: free, 6
licet: impers., it is allowed or permitted, 6
locus, -ī m.: place, region, location, 33
M.: Marcus, 7
magnus, -a, -um: great, large; mighty, important, 34
maior, maius: greater, 7
mandō (1): order, command, commit, 6
manus, manūs, f.: hand; group, 5
maximē: exceedingly especially, 5
maximus, -a, -um: greatest, largest, 7
memoria, -ae. f.: memory, 6
mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier, 17
mīlle pl. mīlia, ium n.: thousand, 28
minor, minus: less, smaller, 18
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus: send, hurl, dismiss, 26
modus, -ī m.: way, manner; **modo** (adv.) only 7
mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 20
mōns, montis m.: mountain, mount, 20
multitūdo, inis f.: multitude, population, people, 11
multus, -a, -um: much, many, 16
muniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to fortify, build, 5
nam: for, 6
nē: lest, that not, no, not, 31
necessārius, -a, -um: necessary, inevitable, 5
nēmō, nūllūs, nēminī, -em, nūllō: no one, 5
neque: and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 50
nihil: nothing, 8
nisi: if not, unless 5
nōbilis, -e: noble, renowned, 6
nōn: not, by no means, not at all, 91
noster, nostra, nostrum: our, 40
novus, -a, -um: new, fresh, young, recent, 9
nox, noctis, f.: night, 6
nūllus, -a, -um: none, no, no one, 8
numerus, -ī m.: number, multitude, 17
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 6
ob: on account of, because of (*acc.*), 7
obsēs, obsidis m./f.: hostage, 18
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 8
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 11

omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 7
omnis, omne: every, all, 70
oportet: it is proper, fitting, necessary, 9
oppidum, -ī n.: town, 14
opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 6
ōrātio, -ionis f.: speaking, speech, language, 8
Orgetorix, -is m.: Orgetorix, 8
ostendō, -ere, -ī, ntus: show, promise, 5
parō (1): prepare, make ready, 5
pars, partis, f.: part, share, side 26
passus, -ūs: pace, 15
pater, patris, m.: father, 6
patior, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 6
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 7
pāx, pācis f.: peace, quiet, rest, 6
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus: drive, push, 8
per: through, across (acc) 33
perficiō, -ere: complete, accomplish, 5
perīculum, -ī n.: risk, danger, peril, 10
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm: persuade, convince, 8
perterreō, -ēre, -terrūī: terrify thoroughly, 6
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī: to pertain to; reach, extend to, 6
pervenio, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: arrive, 8
pēs, pedis m.: foot, 5
petō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, aim at, 12
Pisō, Pīsōnis m.: Piso, 5
plūrimus, -a, -um: most, very many, 6
plūs (plūris): more, 7
polliceor, -cērī, -citus: promise, offer, 6
populus, -ī m.: people, nation, 47
possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, avail, 73
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 12
potestās, potestātis f.: power, influence, might, 5
praesidium, -iī n.: guard, protection, 6
praesum, -esse, -fuī: be over, preside over, 5
prīmus -a -um: first, 15
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 9
prō: before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*), 14
proelium, -iī n.: battle, combat, 33
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus: set out, depart, 9
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus: keep off, prohibit, 11
propter: on account of, because of, 12
propterea: on this account, therefore, 15
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 25
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, very close, 12
pūblicus, -a, -um: public, common, 6
pugnō (1): to fight, 10
putō (1): to think, imagine, 7
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum: to seek, ask, inquire, 8
quārē: wherefore, therefore, why, 5
quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 5

que: and, 114
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 5
quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?): who, which, that, 326
quidem: indeed, in fact, certainly, 9
quīn: nay (even), (but) that, 7
ratio, ratiōnis, f.: calculation, account, 5
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take back, recover, 10
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: to bring back, 6
referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report bring back 6
regnum, -ī n.: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum: to leave behind, 6
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, left (over), 20
reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum: find (out), discover, 9
rēs, reī, f.: thing, matter, affair, business, 71
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum: to answer, 10
revertō, -ere, reversī: turn back, return, 6
Rhēnus, -ī m.: Rhine River, 20
Rhodanus, -a, -um: Rhone, 11
rīpa, -ae f.: bank, shore, 5
rogō (1): to ask; tell, 5
Rōmānus, -a, -um: of Rome, Roman, 55
saepe: often, 5
salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 5
satis: enough, sufficient, 8
sē: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 167
sed: but, moreover, however, 21
senātus, -ūs m.: senate, council of elders, 21
Sēquanus, -a, -um: Sequanian, 33
sequor, -ī, secūtus: follow, pursue, 7
sī: if (only), whether, in case that, 49
signum -ī, n.: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5
sine: without (*abl.*), 12
singulus, -a, -um: one by one, 5
sīve, seu: whether, or (if), 6
socius, -ī m.: comrade, ally, companion, 9
sōlus, -a, -um: alone, only, lone, sole, 8
spēs, -ēī f.: hope, expectation, 10
statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum: set up, establish; decide, 5
stipendium, -iī n.: pay; military service, 5
sub: under, below, beneath, underneath, 7
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be, 79
summus, -a, -um: top of, highest (part of) 18
sumō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum: take, spend 4
superō (1): surpass, overcome, 9
superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 5
suus, -a, -um: his, her, its, their own, 124
tam: so, so much, so very, such, 7
tamen: however, nevertheless, 9
tantus, -a, -um: so great, so large, 11
telum, -ī n.: projective, weapon, blow, 5
tempus, temporis, n.: time, occasion, 14
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold, keep, 13
tertius, -a, -um: third, 11

timeō, -ēre, timuī: to be afraid, be scared, 5
tīmor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 9
tōtus -a, -um: whole, entire, 16
trādūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: lead across, cross 9
trāns: over, across (+ acc.), 7
trāns: over, across (+ acc.), 7
trānseō, -īre, -ī (ivī), itus: pass (by), 15
trēs, tria: three, 7
tum: then, at that time, 5
ubi: where, when, 11
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 5
ūnus, -a, -um: one, 23
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice; advantage, 6
ut: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 74
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each (of two) 7
utī: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 27
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum: use, employ (*abl.*), 8
Valērius, -ī m.: Valerius, 5
vel: or, either...or, 7
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus: come, go, 25
vetus, veteris: old, experienced, 5
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: to see, 18
vigilia, -ae f.: watch (1/4 period of night), 5
vīncō, -ere, vīcī, victum: conquer, defeat, 14
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, manhood, excellence, 15
vīs, vīs, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 5
volō, velle, voluī: will, wish, be willing, 24
voluntās, -tātis f.: will, wish, choice, 10